

Contemporary English Series

當代英語叢書

活用英語
句式指南

SENTENCE
STRUCTURE

鍾子岩 著
姚善友 校訂

PDG

本書經商務印書館香港分館及香港問學社授權
書林出版有限公司在台灣地區出版發行。

活用英語句式指南

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

定價 150 元

著 者／鍾子岩

校訂者／姚善友

出版者／書林出版有限公司

台北市 10764 羅斯福路四段 62 巷 5 號

電話：3928617 FAX：3923548

發行人／蘇正隆

郵 撥／01145704・書林書店

印 刷／國榮印刷廠

登記證／局版臺業字第一八三一號

中華民國八十年一月出版

ISBN 957-586-093-4



目 錄

第一章 各種句型(Different Types of Sentence Construction)	1
I. 陳述句(Declarative Sentences)	2
1. 詞序的倒置(狀語放在句首)(2) 2. said he 之類的倒置法(3) 3. 強勢的語句放在句首的強勢法(3) 4. 省略句(Elliptical Sentences)(4) 5. 插句(Parenthetical Sentences)(6) 6. 感嘆句(Exclamatory Sentences)(7)	
II. 從屬陳述句(Subordinate Statements)	8
1. 用 that 引導(9) 2. that 的省略(10) 3. 用 but 或 but that 引導(11) 4. 用 lest 引導(12) 5. 從屬感嘆句(Subordinate Exclamatory Clauses)(12) 6. 作補語用的不定式(12) 7. 所有格+動名詞(13)	
III. 祈使句(Imperative Sentences)	14
1. 主語省略(14) 2. 主語不省略(15) 3. 主語與動詞倒置(15) 4. 用 let 的祈使句(16) 5. Will [would] you...? (17) 6. 感嘆祈使句(Exclamatory Commands)(17) 7. 帶 be 的第三人稱祈使句(18) 8. pray 放在句首的祈使句(18) 9. please 後跟不定式(19)	
IV. 從屬祈使句(Subordinate Commands)	19
1. 用不定式表示(19) 2. that ... should [might] (20)	
V. 疑問句(Interrogative Sentences)	21
1. 句首用疑問詞(特殊疑問句)(23) 2. 用陳述句的形式(25) 3. 疑問句和 do, does, did (26) 4. 帶 can 或 be 的思考疑問句(Deliberative Questions)(27) 5. 修辭疑問句(Rhetorical Questions)(27) 6. 帶 should 的修辭	

疑問句(28)	7. 省略式疑問句(Elliptical Questions)(29)	
8. 插入疑問句(Parenthetical Questions)(29)	9. 疑問詞不在句首(30)	
VI. 從屬疑問句(Subordinate Questions)		30
1. if-clause; whether-clause(31)	2. 疑問詞引導(31)	
3. 用不定式(33)	4. 省略式從屬疑問句(33)	
VII. 特殊的主語、賓語和名詞從句(Special Subjects, Objects and Noun Clauses).....		34
1. 先行詞 it(34)	2. 強調的 it(36)	3. 複述性質的 it(37)
4. 無人稱 it(37)	5. 名詞從句(38)	6. 動名詞代替名詞從句(41)
7. 間接賓語在直接賓語之前; 直接賓語在間接賓語之前(42)		
第二章 狀語結構(Adverbial Constructions)		43
I. 條件(Condition)		43
1. if + 直陳語氣(43)	2. if + 虛擬語氣: a. 現在時(44); b. 過去時(45); c. 過去完成時(47)	3. if-clause 的省略式(47)
4. 略去 if 而將動詞或助動詞放在主語之前(48)	5. unless(49)	6. but for(49)
7. but that(50)	8. in case(that); in case of(51)	9. provided(that)(52)
10. 祈使語氣 + and(53)	11. 祈使語氣 + or(else)(53)	12. granting that; let it be granted that(54)
13. suppose(that)(55)	14. 獨立分詞結構(Nominative Absolute)(55)	15. whether ... or(not)(55)
16. otherwise(56)	17. 不定式短語(57)	18. 分詞短語(57)
19. 介詞 + 動名詞(58)	20. once-clause(59)	21. without; with(59)
22. 表示願望的 if-clause(60)		
II. 原因或理由(Cause or Reason)		60
1. because(60)	2. for(62)	3. as(63)
4. since(63)	5. inasmuch as(64)	6. 分詞短語(64)
7. 獨立分詞結構(67)	8. 不定式短語(68)	9. that-clause(69)
10. 用關係代詞或關係副詞引導的從句(70)	11. 介詞 +	

動名詞(71)	12. for fear of + 動名詞; for fear that(71)
13. 介詞短語(72)	14. what with ... and what with(74)
15. in that(74)	16. lest(75)
	17. whereas(75)
Ⅲ. 結果(Result)	76
A. 並列結構(Co-ordinate Constructions)	
1. so(76)	2. accordingly(76)
	3. therefore(77)
4. consequently(77)	5. then(77)
	6. hence (thence)(78)
	7. thus(78)
	8. as a result(78)
	9. with the result [consequence] that(78)
B. 從屬結構(Subordinate Constructions)	
10. so that(79)	11. that; so ... that(80)
	12. so ... as to; such...as to(81)
	13. whence(81)
	14. wherefore(82)
	15. 不定式(82)
	16. 介詞短語(83)
Ⅳ. 讓步(Concession).....	84
1. though, although(84)	2. though(although) 和虛擬語氣連用(85)
	3. though, although 從句中主語和動詞的省略(86)
	4. though, although 的倒置(86)
	5. as; that(87)
	6. if; even if(88)
	7. granted that(90)
	8. may..., but [and yet](91)
	9. indeed..., but [and yet](92)
	10. for all (that)(92)
	11. however + 形容詞或副詞(93)
	12. 以 -ever, -soever 等詞引導(94)
	13. no matter how [what, who, etc.](95)
	14. 由代詞的倒置構成(96)
	15. 祈使語氣 + as one may [will](97)
	16. 略去 though [although](97)
	17. 省略形式(98)
	18. while; whilst(98)
	19. in spite of(the fact that)(99)
	20. despite; regardless of(99)
	21. notwithstanding(100)
	22. when(100)
	23. whereas(100)
	24. 不定式(101)
	25. 分詞(101)
V. 目的(Purpose).....	102
1. 不定式(103)	2. in order to(103)
	3. on purpose to(不定式)(104)
	4. that ... may(104)
	5. in order

	that(105)	6. so that(105)	7. lest(106)	8. so as to(107)	9. 介詞短語(108)	10. and(108)	
VI.	行爲方式(Manner).....						109
	1. as(109)	2. 謂語省略的 as-clause(110)	3. 主語省略的 as-clause(110)	4. 主語和動詞省略的 as-clause(111)	5. as 引導插句(111)	6. as if; as though(112)	7. as much as [as if] to say(113)
						8. like, unlike(114)	
	9. 口語用法的 like(114)	10. so that(115)	11. such that(116)	12. 分詞或分詞短語(116)	13. what(116)		
VII.	程度、比例和比較(Degree, Proportion and Comparison).....						117
	1. as ... as(117)	2. 動詞省略的 as ... as(118)	3. (not) so ... as(120)	4. not so much ... as(121)	5. as(as much as 的省略形式)(122)	6. in proportion as(122)	
	7. according as(123)	8. (more)than(123)	9. than-clause 的省略(124)	10. so ... that(125)	11. so much ... that; so much so that(126)	12. such...that(127)	
	13. so ... as to(128)	14. but that(128)	15. the + 比較級(129)	16. too + 不定式(130)	17. too + for(130)	18. 表示程度的介詞短語(131)	19. 數量表現法 (Measures)(132)
VIII.	除外(Exception).....						133
	1. beyond(133)	2. but(134)	3. but that(134)	4. except; except that(135)	5. excepting(136)	6. save; save that(137)	7. only that(138)
						8. other than(139)	
IX.	地點(Place).....						139
	1. where(140)	2. whence(141)	3. whither(141)	4. wherever; wheresoever(142)			
X.	時間(Time).....						142
	1. when(144)	2. while; whilst(145)	3. after(146)	4. before(147)	5. until; till(148)	6. as(150)	

7. since(151)	8. now that(152)	9. directly; immediately(153)
(153)	10. the moment, the instant, etc. (153)	11. once(154)
12. as long as; so long as(155)	13. as soon as(155)	14. as often as(157)
15. whenever; whensoever(158)	16. every time(158)	
17. by the time (that)(159)	18. ere(160)	19. 獨立 分詞結構(160)
20. 分詞短語(161)	21. when-clause 的省略形式(162)	22. 介詞+動名詞(164)
23. 介詞短 語(165)	24. 作狀語用的名詞(167)	
XI. 限制(Restriction).....169		
1. as; as far as(169)	2. as regards(170)	3. 用 for 引 導的語句(171)
4. in that; in so far as(172)		
XII. 伴隨情況(Attendant Circumstances).....172		
1. 獨立分詞結構(173)	2. much less; still less; much more; still more(174)	3. 分詞短語或定語短語(174)
4. without; instead of; besides 引導的動名詞(176)		
第三章 定語結構(Attributive Construction)..... 179		
I. 定語(Attributes)..... 180		
1. 定語的後置(180)	2. 作定語短語用的介詞短語(181)	
3. 作定語短語用的不定式(181)	4. 不定冠詞的倒置(182)	
II. 分詞短語(Participial Phrases)..... 183		
1. 在名詞之後(183)	2. 在所修飾的名詞之前(184)	3. 作 補語用(185)
III. 同位語句(Appositions).....186		
1. 同位語(Appositives)(186)	2. or(187)	3. namely; viz.; that is; i.e.; for example; e.g.(188)
4. as; such as(190)	5. 同位語從句(Appositional Clauses)(190)	
IV. 定語從句(Attributive Clauses).....191		
1. who, which, that, etc. (192)	2. 關係代詞的省略 (193)	3. 先行詞的省略(194)
4. when, before, etc. (195)	5. where, whence, why(196)	6. wherein,

whereby, etc. (197)	7. such as; as(197)	8. 作定語用的 which(199)	9. but(199)
第四章 並列結構(Co-ordinations)..... 201			
I. 特殊並列連詞(Special Co-ordinate Conjunctions).....201			
1. again(202)	2. also(202)	3. even(202)	4. besides(202)
5. as well; as well as(203)	6. both ... and(203)	7. what is more (better, etc.)(205)	8. not only ... but (also)(205)
9. when(206)	10. where; whence(207)	11. who(207)	12. which(208)
13. neither ... nor; either ... or(209)			
II. 反意的並列結構(Adversative Co-ordinations).....210			
1. but(210)	2. nevertheless(210)	3. notwithstanding(211)	4. only(211)
5. on the contrary(212)	6. on the other hand(212)	7. rather(213)	8. still; yet(213)
9. though(214)	10. withal(214)	11. all the same; just the same(214)	12. conversely(215)
III. 排列與分析(Arrangement and Analysis).....215			
1. at one time ... at another(215)	2. first, then, finally; first, then, last(215)	3. first, second, etc.; firstly [first], secondly, etc. (216)	4. half ... half(217)
5. in the first place ... in the second (next) place, etc. (217)	6. now ... now(217)	7. partly ... partly(217)	8. sometimes ... sometimes(218)
9. at times ... at(other)times(218)	10. what with ... and what with(218)	11. the former ... the latter(219)	
第五章 特種動詞及動詞短語(Certain Verbs and Verb Phrases)..... 221			
I. Do, Did, Does(作表意動詞用).....221			
1. 及物動詞用法(221)	2. done(222)	3. 不及物動詞用法(222)	4. 代替動詞的 do(223)
5. 強調的			

do(223)	6. 倒置的 do(224)	
II. May		224
1. 表示“允許, 可能, 應該”(225)	2. 表示“能力”;	
as best one may(225)	3. may well(225)	4. may as
well(226)	5. may [might] as well ... as(226)	
III. 表示“決心, 意圖”等意義的動詞(Verbs Expressing		
Determination, Intention, etc.)		227
1. bent on [upon] (227)	2. have a mind; be going	
to(227)	3. make up one's mind(228)	4. set one's
heart on [upon] (228)	5. will(228)	
IV. 表示習慣性動作的動詞(Verbs Expressing Habitual		
Action)		229
1. be given to(229)	2. go on; keep on(229)	3. used
+ 不定式(229)	4. will; would(230)	5. be wont
to(230)		
V. 表示“必要、義務、意願”的動詞(Verbs Expressing		
Necessity, Duty and Desirability)		231
1. is(are)to(231)	2. be bound to(231)	3. be obliged
to(231)	4. have to(232)	5. have got to(232)
6. cannot but+動詞; cannot help+現在分詞(233)		
7. had better+不帶 to 的不定式; had best+不帶 to 的不		
定式(233)	8. need(234)	9. needs must; must
needs(234)	10. shall 用於第二人稱和第三人稱(235)	
11. ought to(235)	12. should(236)	
VI. 願望表現法(Expressions of Wish)		236
(用虛擬語氣表示的場合)		
1. 正常的詞序(236)	2. 詞序的倒置(237)	3. may(237)
4. would that 的省略式(237)	5. had(would)as lief(239)	
6. would rather; had rather(239)	7. would sooner;	
would as soon; had sooner; had as soon(239)	8. shall	
用於詢問對方意圖(240)	9. prefer ... to(240)	10. should

(would)like to(241)	11. will (= wish) (241)	
VI. 不定式和動名詞的特殊用法(Special Uses of Infinitives and Gerunds).....		241
1. 以不定式代替名詞(242)	2. 動名詞用作名詞(243)	
3. 動名詞用作動詞的賓語(243)	4. 不定式用作動詞的賓語(243)	
5. 不定式限制形容詞(244)	6. 插入不定式(244)	
7. 構成感嘆句的不定式(245)	8. a-hunting, a-playing, etc. (245)	
VII. 聯繫動詞(Copulas).....		246
1. come(246)	2. fall(246)	3. get(247)
		4. go(247)
5. grow(247)	6. hold(248)	7. keep(248)
		8. lie(248)
9. look(249)	10. make(249)	11. prove(249)
12. stand(250)	13. turn(250)	14. turn out(250)
15. wax(251)		

第一章

各種句型

(Different Types Of Sentence Construction)

所謂句子是表達一個完整思想的基本語言單位；一般地說，它必須包含兩個部分，就是敘述的主體——主語和關於那主體所敘述的事情，即句子的謂語；從結構上看，句子有簡單句，並列句和複合句三種；簡單句是敘述單一的思想的，它只包含一個主語和一個謂語；並列句是連接兩個或兩個以上並列的思想的句子；複合句則是由主句和從句構成的句子。

(1)簡單句(Simple Sentence):

I could not go to school yesterday.

(2)並列句(Compound Sentence):

I was ill yesterday and I could not go to school.

(3)複合句(Complex Sentence):

As I was ill yesterday, I could not go to school.

再從敘述的方式來分類，句子有下列四種：

(1)陳述句(Declarative Sentence):

I like that book.

(2)感嘆句(Exclamatory Sentence):

How time flies!

(3)祈使句(Imperative Sentence):

Bring me that book.

(4)疑問句(Interrogative Sentence):

Is that book yours?

I . 陳述句(Declarative Sentences)

本節所述的，以敘述形式——尤其是詞序、省略用法等——為主。

1. 詞序的倒置 (狀語放在句首)

(a) *Then came* a heavy rain storm. (=A heavy rain storm came then.)

然後大暴風雨來了。

(b) *First came* the music.

先奏樂。

(c) *On the table beside me burned* a lamp, and *near it lay* a little box. (=A lamp burned on the table beside me, and a little box lay near it.)

我身邊的桌上點着一盞燈，燈旁邊放着一個小盒子。

陳述句的普通詞序是“主語+動詞+副詞”。但爲了加強語氣，有時將副詞或狀語短語放在句首，變成“副詞（狀語短語）+動詞+主語”的詞序。

(a) *Safely in harbour is* the ship. (=The ship is safely in harbour.)

船隻平安地停在港裏。

(b) *Behind him had come in* a tall woman.

一個高身材的女人跟着他進來。

(c) The clouds ran widely across the sky, and *between them danced* the stars, hither and thither, here and there.

雲悠悠地飄過天空，星兒在它們中間到處閃爍着。

2. said he 之類的倒置法

"Yes", replied John.

“是的”，約翰回答說。

用引用句時，常將動詞放在主語前面。

(a) *"Come in!" cried the little man.* (= ..., the little man cried.)

那身材矮小的人喊道：“進來！”

(b) *"Help me on to that horse," said Wakem to Luke.*

華金對路克說：“請幫我上馬。”

3. 強勢的語句放在句首的強勢法

Much gratitude I get for saving you.

我救了你，你毫不感激。

爲了增強語氣，有將賓語、表語、狀語短語等放在句首的。但本項所述的改變詞序的情形與狀語短語放在句首的情形不同；就是主語和動詞仍照普通的詞序。

(a) *Wyatt's two sisters I know very well, and most amiable and clever girls they were.* (= I know Wyatt's two sisters very well, and they were most amiable and clever girls.)

瓦埃特的兩個姊妹我很熟悉，她們是最溫柔伶俐的姑娘。

(b) *Back to his own house he went.*

他回到自己的家裏去了。

如上所述，這種句子的主語和動詞是依普通的詞序排列的，但有一個例外：即當 *blessed*, *happy*, *great* 等詞放在句首時，動詞一概放在主語之前。例如：

(a) *Blessed are the pure in heart.*

心地純潔的人有福了。

(b)*Happy is he who has a sound mind in a sound body.*

身體健康而且精神健全的人是幸福的。

(c)*Great is the power of the man who has nothing to lose.*

無物可失者其力量是巨大的。

又有一種在句尾重複主語來增強印象的句式，這時先行的主語一般是代詞。例如：

(a)*It was good, this tea from China.*

這種來自中國的茶葉好極了。

(b)*Oh, but he was an awful miser, was Scrooge.*

啊，斯克洛琪他是一個非常吝嗇的守財奴呀！

(c)*She was of a spare and straight shape, this young lady.*

這位年輕姑娘，身材瘦，腰背挺直。

4. 省略句(Elliptical Sentences)

(a)*John did 30 sums; Bob, 60.*

約翰做了三十道算術題；鮑勃做了六十道。

(b)*Youth is the time for sowing, age (is the time) for reaping.*

青年時代是播種時期；老年時代是收穫時期。

(1) 主語的省略

在日常會話中，省略第一人稱代詞 I，有時省略句中的代詞和動詞。

(a)*Beg pardon (= I beg your pardon).*

對不起，您說什麼？

(b)*Good luck to you, captain.*

船長，祝您幸運。

[比較] *I wish you joy and luck, Kate.*

祝您快樂幸運，凱蒂。

(2)動詞的省略（爲了避免重複）

(a)James is right and *Mary (is) wrong.*

詹姆斯是對的，瑪麗錯了。

(b)*I'm your born uncle, Davie, my man, and you (are) my born nephew.*

喂，大衛，我是你的親伯父，你是我的親侄子。

(3)做後續從句主語的名詞和動詞的省略

後續從句的主語和動詞如跟先行從句的主語和動詞一致，就可以省略。例如：

England is a paradise for the well-to-do, (England is) a purgatory for the able, and (England is) a hell for the poor.

英國是富人的天堂，能幹者的煉獄，窮人的地獄。

(4)介詞短語(Prepositional Phrases) 的省略

構成句子的兩個或兩個以上的從句或短語，如果關聯的是同一個介詞短語，則將它放在句尾，只用一個介詞短語來銜接那些從句或短語：

(a)*I feel glad, and I feel sad, all at the same time, about leaving.*

對於離別我覺得高興，同時又感到悲傷。

(b)*The biggest problem at the present time, therefore, has to do with the application, rather than the further prosecution, of the vocabulary.*

所以，目前最關重要的問題不是詞彙的進一步追求，而是詞彙的應用。

(5)狀語從句 (adverbial clauses) 的省略

例如 *if necessary, while eating, though young,* 等等。參看各該項目。

5. 插句(Parenthetical Sentences)

(a) This, *he told her*, was the end.

他告訴她說，這就是結局。

(b) Great men, *it is true*, are sometimes very careless about their appearance.

有時偉人不修邊幅，這是實在的。

插句的位置並無一定，有時在主語之後；有時在謂語中間，有時則介於兩個從句之間。它的前後常用逗點(,)。最常用的插句是 I (You, We) know, I think, I believe (trust), I presume, I am (We are) told, I find, It is true 等。

(a) The Greeks, *you know*, personified the winds, giving them names, and praying to them as gods, and building temples to them.

你們知道，希臘人將風擬人化，給它們起了名，把它們當作神來祈禱，並替它們造了廟宇。

(b) Sincerity, *I think*, is better than grace.

我以為誠實勝過優雅。

(c) You are, *I am afraid*, far more urgently in need of medical advice than your daughter.

恐怕你比你的女兒更迫切地需要醫治。

這種插句也有照原來的形式移放在句尾的。例如：

(a) There was danger ahead, *so he said*.

他這樣說：前面有危險。

(b) Doctors brave much danger, *says Evans*.

埃文斯說，醫生擔着許多風險。

又作者在文中敘述自己的意見時，也用插句的形式。如：

At the age of ten—*such is the power of genius*—he could read Greek with facility.

十歲時——這就是天才的威力——他已能容易地閱讀希臘文了。

6. 感嘆句 (Exclamatory Sentences)

(a) *Why, what a big place* the world is!

哦，世界是多麼遼闊啊！

(b) *How delightful* the far North is in the summer!

夏季的北極多麼可愛！

表示感嘆是用“how + 形容詞（副詞）”或“what + 不定冠詞 + 形容詞 + 名詞”的結構。

(a) *How pretty* the girl is!

這女孩多美！

(b) *How hard* he works!

他工作得多麼努力啊！

(c) *What a delightful evening* this is!

今晚多麼舒適！

(d) Oh, *what a lovely afternoon* it was!

哦，一個多麼可愛的下午！

(e) *What fine weather* we are having today!

今天天氣多好啊！

注意感嘆句與疑問句的詞序：

比較	{	How old he is!
		他多麼老啊！
		How old is he?
		他多大年紀？

比較	{	What mistakes you have made!
		你犯了多大的錯誤!
		What mistakes have you made ?
		你犯了些什麼錯誤?

How 或 what 有時省略形容詞或副詞而構成感嘆句。例如:

How I dislike that woman!

我真討厭那個女人!

感嘆句在表示激動的感情時，常將主語與動詞略去。這種句子係由“how + 形容詞”或“what + (不定冠詞 +) 名詞”構成:

(a) *What* a terrible accident!

多麼悲慘的事故!

(b) *How* foolish of him!

他做了多麼愚蠢的事!

(c) *What* an idea!

這是什麼意思!

也有完全和陳述句一樣，不用 how 或 what 的，例如:

“Ah! *That's better*”, the man sighed.

“噯，這樣好些，”那人嘆息一聲說。

此外又有用關係代詞 that 來構成感嘆句的，例如:

The things *that girls say nowadays*!

現在的姑娘們居然說這種話!

II . 從屬陳述句(Subordinate Statements)

本節所述的從屬陳述句是指 that-clause 或相當於從屬連詞 that 所引導的從句，即作主句中動詞的賓語用的名詞從句而言。

1. 用 that 引導

(a) I tell you *that you are mistaken*.

真的你錯了。

(b) Columbus proved *that the world is round*.

哥倫布證明地球是圓的。

這種名詞從句前面的動詞主要是這些：

1. 表示“知悉”等：

know, find, see, learn, realize, notice, read, etc.

2. 表示“發言”等：

say, tell, assert, insist, etc.

3. 表示“思考”、“希望”等：

think, believe, expect, hope, fear, remember, etc.

4. 表示“容許”、“否定”、“證明”等：

admit, deny, prove, etc.

採用這種 *that*-clause 的形式時，應該注意時態。主句的動詞如果是過去時態或過去完成時，那末 *that*-clause 的時態必須跟它一致。例如：

(a) He knew *that she* (Hetty) *had not had time to read the letter*.

他知道海蒂還沒有來得及看這封信。

(b) He promised *that he would soon pay back the debts*.

他答應不久就把借款償還。

(c) I feared *that some serious disaster had befallen my friend*.

我怕有什麼大禍已臨到我朋友的頭上。

(d) They had already learned *that Columbus discovered America*.

他們已經曉得哥倫布發現美洲的事。

假如主句的時態是現在時態或將來時態，那末 *that*-clause 的時態並不要跟它一致：

(a) He says *that he will come tomorrow*.

他說明天來。

(b) By God...I'll see to it *that you're the first to go*.

我敢對天發誓——我要竭力讓你先去。

雖然主句的動詞是過去時，但若 *that*-clause 所陳述的是普通真理或事實，那末時態也可以不一致。例如：

(a) Galileo taught *that the earth moves*.

伽里略指出了地球是在運動的。

(b) We learnt at school *that 2 and 2 is 4*.

我們在學校裏學過二加二等於四。

That 所引導的賓語從句，有爲了強勢而放在主句之前的。例如：

(a) *That this is so*, I will try to prove. (= I will try to prove that this is so.)

我一定要作出證明，這是如此的。

(b) *That I have foibles, and perhaps many of them*, I shall not deny.

我不否認我有缺點，而且也許缺點很多。

(c) *That we shall die*, we know.

我們曉得我們總是要死的。

2. *that* 的省略

(a) I told him (that) *he was wrong*.

我對他說他錯了。

(b) The poet said (that) *he believed (that) the boy had talent*.

詩人說，他相信那少年有才華。

引導名詞從句的 *that* 原是極弱的從屬連詞，所以常被省略。

Mr. Shaw had not said (*that*) *he should come home so early*, but Polly thought (*that*) *he might*, and went to meet him.

蕭先生雖未曾說過他將這樣早回家，但波萊覺得他也許會早歸，所以去接他。

3. 用 *but* 或 *but that* 引導

(a) Who knows *but it is all true?* (= Who knows that it is *not* all true?)

誰知道這事不是全部真實？

(b) Who knows *but that he may alter his mind?* (= Who knows that he may *not* alter his mind?)

誰曉得他不會變心呢？

如 *that*-clause 包含否定意義時，用 *but* 或 *but that*。那是 *that...not* 的意思。

Who knows *but it may be so?*

誰知它不會這樣？

但 *but that* 的 *but* 有時沒有否定的意義，僅含 *that* 的意思。

例如：

(a) Desnoyers did not doubt *but that* there was some truth in all this.

德納耶相信這裏有些真理。

(b) I cannot but believe *but that* I should know you, notwithstanding all that time may have done.

我相信碰到時我總是認識你的，儘管時過境遷，變化很大。

4. 用 *lest* 引導

I fear lest he (should) come too late.

我怕他來得太遲。

Lest 所引導的名詞從句之前，一般是表示驚恐、憂懼等詞，像 *fear*, *dread*, *anxious* 等等。*lest* 在這裏是 *that* 的意思，其後的謂語動詞一般用虛擬式的動詞原形或“*should* + 動詞原形”。

(a) *A little way off stood Gervaise, fearing lest any harm (should) befall Florestan.*

吉維斯在相離不遠的地方站着，害怕有什麼危險會降臨在福洛萊斯坦身上。

(b) *I trembled lest the mischance (should) befall him.*

我發抖，生怕有什麼災禍降到他身上。

5. 從屬感嘆句 (Subordinate Exclamatory Clauses)

It is wonderful how well he does it.

真了不起，這件事他做得多好。

構成從句的感嘆句也跟普通的感嘆句一樣是以 *how* 或 *what* a... 開始的。

(a) *It is surprising how cheaply he bought it.*

他買的這個東西那麼便宜，真叫人驚奇。

(b) *I can fancy what a flutter it would make!*

我可以想像它將怎樣轟動一時！

6. 作補語用的不定式

(a) *Our parents taught us to speak the truth and to fear nothing.*

父母教導我們要說真話，不要畏懼。

(b) You can't expect her *to have gloves*. (= You can't expect that she has gloves.)

你不能期望她戴手套。

上列的句子在形式上雖然是簡單句，但它在內容上是用不定式來簡潔地表達 (Our parents taught) *that* we should speak...and we should fear...這個從句的意思。

(a) I judged him *to be about sixty years of age*. (= I judged that he was about sixty...)

我斷定他的年齡在六十左右。

(b) I knew the man *to be an impostor*.

我曉得那人是個騙子。

(c) Unlocking the case he found it *to contain a necklace*.

他把盒子打開，看見裏面藏着一條項鏈。

(d) Nobody believed the statement *to be true*.

誰也不信那個說法是真實的。

7. 所有格+動名詞

I insist on *your all meeting me there*. (= I insist *that you all should meet me there*.)

務請你們全體到那地方會我。

這種結構跟前項的結構相同，也是簡單句。爲了使文字簡潔，而用“所有格+動名詞”的形式來表示 *that*-clause 的意義。

用動名詞做句子的主語時，就將表示“行爲者”的名詞（如 John, Mary 等）的所有格或物主代詞（如 my, your 等）冠於句首。

(a) *Mr. Chang's being present* made us very happy. (= It made us very happy *that Mr. Chang was present*.)

張先生的到場使我們感到非常高興。

(b) *My not understanding* annoyed him. [= It annoyed him *that I did not understand (him).*]

我的不了解使他感到苦惱。

(c) What I admire in him is not *his having made a great discovery*, but his *having gone to search for it* on the faith of an opinion.

我欽佩他，並非因為他作出了偉大的發現，而是因為他堅信自己的主張而從事探索。

III. 祈使句 (Imperative Sentences)

祈使句包括語法上所謂祈使語氣的一切形式，用以表示命令，懇求和勸告。

1. 主語省略

(a) *Come* along with me.

請隨我來。

(b) *Be* so kind as (kind enough) to shut the door.

請把門關上。

(a) *Never argue* at the dinner table, for the one who is not hungry always gets the best of the argument.

切勿在餐桌上辯論，因為肚子不餓的人總是辯論的優勝者。

(b) *Study* your failures and *be instructed* by them.

要研究你自己失敗的經驗並(從中)吸取教訓。

2. 主語不省略

命令、懇求或勸告本來只對第二人稱 *you* 而發，所以有把 *you* 這個主語省略的習慣。可是爲了加強語氣，或有兩個以上的人而指定某一特定的人的時候，仍然把 *you* 加上去。

You take my advice.

請您接受我的忠告吧。

(a) *You talk*; we have heard enough from the others.

請講吧；別人的話我們已聽夠了。

(b) I must go about my work. *You amuse yourself in any way (that) you like.*

我必須着手工作，您請隨意消遣吧。

現在再將用 *you* 來間接表示命令、懇求或勸告的例子列舉於下，供參考：

(a) *You must not talk so loud!*

切勿如此高聲談話！

(b) John, *you're going to bed early tonight!*

約翰，今晚你得早點睡吧。

(c) *You will call out "my mother"*, please.

請叫聲“我的母親”。

(d) *You are always to shut the door when you enter this room!*

你進房去一定得把門關上！

(e) *You might call at the baker's and get some bread.*

請到麵包店去買點麵包來。

3. 主語與動詞倒置

(a) Now *listen you to me.*

現在請聽我說。

(b) *Seek ye the kingdom of truth first.*

你們須首先探索真理的王國。

前項所述的 *you (take my advice)* 的形式，有因加強語氣而置於動詞之後的。

又有爲了加強語氣，在 *you* 之前加助動詞 *do*（肯定）或 *don't*（否定），而動詞仍放在主語之後。例如：

(a) *Don't you be talking when he comes in.*

他進來時請勿談話。

(b) *Do you wait here while I go.*

我不在時請您等在這裏。

4. 用 *let* 的祈使句

(a) *Let him come.*

讓他來吧。

(b) *Let A B C be a triangle.*

設 A B C 爲一三角形。

對於第一人稱和第三人稱的祈使，用 *Let us (me); Let them (him, her, it)* 的形式。

(a) *Let us go and have lunch somewhere.*

我們到什麼地方去吃頓午餐吧。

(b) *Let it not be supposed, from what I have just said, that I am detailing any mystery, or penning any romance.*

不要認爲我剛才所說的話，是在詳述什麼神奇故事或寫什麼傳奇小說。

5. Will [would] you...?

(a) *Will you* kindly have these letters posted?

請您將這些信件寄出去，好嗎？

(b) *Would you* have the kindness to take me to your son?

請您領我到您兒子那兒去，好不好？

這是間接的祈使語氣，用疑問句的形式來表達上述 *you will* 的意思的，是一種比較委婉的表現法。

[比較]

Perhaps *you will* favour me with a little more information.

也許您會給我略為詳細的報道吧。

And *you'll* write to me, won't you?

請您寫封信給我好嗎？

6. 感嘆祈使句 (Exclamatory Commands)

(a) *To arms!*

準備戰鬥! (軍隊中的口令)

(b) "*Away!...away!*" cried she wildly.

“滾開! 滾開!” 她厲聲叫喊。

(a) "*Forward, men, forward!*" cried the commander, ordering the bugler to sound the charge.

“前進，弟兄們，前進!” 指揮官一面命令號手吹衝鋒號，一面這樣叫喊。

(b) *Away with* racial prejudice!

消除種族偏見!

7. 帶 be 的第三人稱祈使句

Here *be* it said.

非在這裏說一說不可。

這裏的 *be* 是用 *let* 所表示的祈使句的變形。Be it so. 就是 Let it be so. 的意思。這種句子有時用作插入句。

(a) Without correct pronunciation, *be it noted*, you cannot get at the true meaning of the word, even in prose literature.

應該注意：倘若沒有正確的讀音，那末雖在散文上，你也不可能領會詞的真義。

(b) Indiscretion and wickedness, *be it known*, are first cousins.

你該知道：魯莽和邪惡是嫡堂兄弟。

8. pray 放在句首的祈使句

(a) *Pray* (= Please) go home.

請回家去。

(b) *Pray* (= Please) be seated.

請坐。

Pray (= I pray you) 跟 *please* (= May it please you) 一樣，是鄭重的說法，可以放在句首，也可以放在句尾。

(a) *Pray* help yourself to anything you want.

你喜歡吃什麼，請隨意吃。

(b) Tell me the reason, *pray* (= please).

請把理由講給我聽。

除 *please*, *pray* 之外，有用 “if you please”, “kindly” 的; *if you please* 普通放在句尾; *kindly* 一概放在句首。

(a) *Kindly* show me the way.

請告訴我路徑。

(b) *This way if you please.* (= Come this way, please.)
請走這邊。

9. please 後跟不定式

(a) *Please to open the door.*

請開門。

(b) *Please not to forget that we want you.*

請別忘記，我們有事找你。

Please to 是古文體，不如 *please(open the door)* 常用。

IV. 從屬祈使句(Subordinate Commands)

不直接傳達說話者的命令或請求，而在形式上作間接的傳達時，用不定式或從句的形式。

1. 用不定式表示

(a) I told him *to go*.

我叫他去。

(b) They asked *to play with us*.

他們要求和我們一同遊戲。

直接祈使: I said to him, "Go." 但用不定式以間接祈使的形式來表示時，直接祈使句中的 say, tell 等在間接祈使句中，依其意義變成 tell, order, bid, ask, request, beg 等。

(a) He *ordered* all *to rise early*.

他吩咐大家早起。

(b) I opened the door and *bade* her enter.

我開了門叫她進來。

(c) I *command* you to do your duty.

我命令你要盡你的職責。

(d) I *begged* my friend to go with me.

我請求我的朋友和我同去。

2. that...should [might]

(a) I gave *orders* that he *should* go.

我發命令叫他去。

(b) He *begged* that they *might* play with us.

他請我們跟他們一同遊戲。

主句中含有表示命令 (order, command), 要求, 懇請 (ask, beg, demand), 決心 (determine), 決定 (decide, arrange), 建議 (propose, suggest), 勸告 (advise), 願望 (desire), 主張 (insist, maintain) 等意義的動詞時, 從句中用虛擬語氣的 *should* 或 *might*。

(a) I suggest *that* you *should* come back with me.

我建議你和我一同回去。

(b) I [a physician] desire (*that*) the patient *should* have a bath every day.

我 [醫生] 希望病人每天能洗一次澡。

(c) We demand *that* the burden *should be* removed.

我們要求豁免這種負擔。

但是也有不用 *should* 而用動詞原形的。例如:

(a) He *insists* that the two books (*should*) *be read* together.

他堅持這兩本書應當同時讀。

(b) I *insist* that he (*should*) *be allowed* his freedom.

我主張允許他自由。

主句中含有 *proper, natural, necessary* 等詞時，從句也用虛擬語氣。例如：

(a) *It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this.*

這樣做是完全適當的。

(b) *It is necessary that he (should) act at once.*

他必須立刻行動起來。

(c) *It was quite natural that they should hate their oppressors.*

他們要憎恨他們的壓迫者，這是極自然的事。

V. 疑問句(Interrogative Sentences)

疑問句從形式上看，主要可分為兩類：(1)有疑問詞，如 *what, how, where, who* 等的，即一般所謂“特殊疑問句”；(2)沒有疑問詞的，即一般所謂“一般疑問句”。一般疑問句以一個助動詞、情態動詞、動詞 *be* 或 *have* 開始。

(1) *Where do you live?*

您往哪兒？

What are you looking at?

您在瞧什麼？

When is the train due(=to arrive)?

火車什麼時候到？

How old is Tom?

湯姆幾歲？

Who is he?

他是誰？

(2) *Do you like roses?*

您喜歡玫瑰花嗎？

Are (were) you hungry?

您餓了嗎？

Will (can, etc.) you go with me?

您願意（可以）跟我一起去嗎？

Have you read the book?

您看了這本書沒有？

一般疑問句的特徵是：不管那問話是肯定句或否定句，通常都可用 Yes 或 No 回答。

疑問句用否定式或肯定式，是依發問者的意思來決定的。例如：

Is that nice?

這好嗎？

Isn't that nice?

這不是很好嗎？

前一句發問者只詢問對方的意見；但後一句發問者是預期着肯定的回答 “Yes, it is very nice” 的。

疑問句的主要種類，除了特殊疑問句和一般疑問句外，還有選擇疑問句 (Alternative Questions) 和反意疑問句 (Disjunctive Questions) 兩種。

選擇疑問句在形式上與一般疑問句相類似，但有兩個答案要由對方擇一答復，因此不能用 Yes 或 No 回答。例如：

Is it black or white?

這是黑的，還是白的？

Were our tactics correct or not?

我們的策略正確不正確？

反意疑問句由兩部分組成，前一部分的形式是陳述句的形式，後一部分是附在前一部分之後的簡短問句。如前一部分為肯定式，

後一部分通常用否定式；如前一部分為否定式，後一部分用肯定式。
要注意的是，兩個部分的時態要一致。

反意疑問句主要在於強調前一部分陳述的意義。例如：

He was angry, *wasn't he?*

他生氣了，是嗎？

He wasn't angry, *was he?*

他沒有生氣，是嗎？

You feel cold here, *don't you?*

您在這兒感到冷了，是嗎？

He didn't take long to decide that, *did he?*

他沒有花費很多時間就作出決定，是嗎？

1. 句首用疑問詞（特殊疑問句）

Who can read this?

誰能閱讀這個？

Who (Whom) are you talking to?

您在對誰說話？

What is he?

他是幹什麼的？

What are you looking at?

您在看什麼？

(1)以疑問代詞 *what, who, whom, whose, which* 構成的疑問句：

Who said that?

這誰說的？

Which boy said that?

哪一個孩子說的？

Which do you like best, tea or coffee?

您最喜歡什麼，茶還是咖啡？

What did he say?

他說了什麼？

Whose child is he?

他是誰的孩子？

(2)以疑問副詞 *when, where, why, how* 構成的疑問句：

[時間] *When* did he say it?

他什麼時候說的？

[地點] *Where* did he say it?

他在什麼地方說的？

[理由] *Why* did he say it?

他為什麼這樣說？

[行爲方式] *How* did he say it?

他怎樣說的？

[次數] *How* often did he say it?

他說了多少次？

疑問代詞和介詞：疑問副詞通常是不附介詞的；但疑問代詞有時須附介詞；介詞放在疑問代詞的前面或句尾。後者是慣用語法。

With what do you smell?

你用什麼嗅味？

To whom do you refer?

你所指的是誰？

Who(m) is that letter *from*?

那信是誰寄來的？

Who(m) does this belong *to*?

這是誰的東西？

What are you looking *for*?

你在找什麼？

What have you come for?

你來幹什麼?

What are you looking at me for?

你瞪着眼看我幹什麼?

What time did you order the taxi for?

你叫的汽車什麼時候來?

What does she look like?

她是怎樣的女人?

What are you talking about?

你們在談論什麼?

爲了加強語氣，在疑問詞後面加上 *in the world, on earth* 等短語，相當於漢語的“究竟”，“到底”。

(a) *What on earth* is the matter?

究竟怎麼一回事?

(b) *Where in the world* were you?

你到底在哪裏?

(c) *What under the sun* do you mean?

你究竟是什麼意思?

(d) *Why on earth* does he behave so?

他到底爲什麼這樣做的?

2. 用陳述句的形式

You will soon be ready?

你就可以準備好了吧?

在口語中，常用陳述句的形式來表示疑問的；講話或朗誦時，須用升調。這種構造的句子，多在說話人預期得到對方肯定的回答時用。

(a) *That is the law of nature?*

那是自然的規律吧?

(b) *You will have a drink?*

你要喝杯酒吧?

(c) *You have fully made up your mind to go?*

你已完全下決心去了嗎?

(d) “*You are not deceiving me, Mr. Robinson?*” asked the matron, wiping away a tear. “*You wouldn’t mock the suffering of a weak woman in such a thing as this?*”

“你不是騙我的吧，魯賓遜先生？”婦人揩着眼淚問道：

“你不會以這樣的事來嘲弄一個弱女子的痛苦吧？”

3. 疑問句和 do, does, did

(a) My God! What *do* you say?

天哪！你說什麼呀？

(b) What *happened?*

什麼事？

疑問句的主語是疑問詞 (who, what, which) 時，自然只要放在動詞前面就行，並不要有 do, did 等助動詞；但這個主語一定是疑問代詞，且以主格為限。

[比較] { *Who swims?*
Does he swim?

[比較] { *Who won the victory?*
Did he win the victory?

[比較] { *Which of you three boys spoke?*
To which of you three boys did he speak?

4. 帶 *can* 或 *be* 的思考疑問句(Deliberative Questions)

- (a) what *can* be the matter?
到底是怎麼一回事?
Who *could* he be?
他究竟是誰?
- (b) What *am* I to do? (=What *shall* I do?)
我該怎麼辦?

疑問句中只有表示疑惑，而不一定要求回答的，這種疑問句叫做思考疑問句。

- (a) To our son there are only two courses open, both connected with great difficulties. *Which shall he take?*
在我們兒子面前擺着的只有兩條路，走這兩條路都有很大的困難，他究竟應當走哪條路呢?
- (b) The hair of the affrighted pedagogue rose upon his head with terror. *What was to be done?*
這位受驚的教書先生嚇得頭髮直豎起來，怎麼辦好呢?

5. 修辭疑問句(Rhetorical Questions)

Won't I just love it?
難道我不願意嗎?

不求回答，也不表示疑惑，形式上雖是疑問句，實則是強有力地表示相反的意思的，這種疑問句叫做修辭疑問句。總之，這種句子是強有力地肯定或否定某樁事實時用的。

- (a) *Was I not* always glad when Sunday came? (=I was always glad when Sunday came.)

過去每逢星期天我不總是高興的嗎？

(b) *Who could* have foreseen it?(= No one could have foreseen it.)

這事誰預料得到？

(c) *Who would not* be healthy if he lived all day in the sunlight and air?

要是終日生活在陽光和(新鮮)空氣中，誰還會不健康呢？

(d) *Who cares?*(= I don't care.)

這樣也好，那樣也好，隨便！

(e) *What, shall* I disgrace my ancestors?(= I shall not disgrace my ancestors.)

噯，我決不能玷辱我的祖先。

6. 帶 should 的修辭疑問句

(a) *Who should* come by *but* the prince?

走過去的不是王子是誰？

(b) *Whom should* I see *but* my own brother?

我所遇見的不是自己的兄弟是誰？

這種修辭疑問句，是由可能的虛擬 *should* 和 *but*(=except)連用而構成的。但疑問詞如果是疑問副詞，那末只用 *should* 而不用 *but* 這一個詞。例如：

(a) It is impossible that an ill-natured man can have a public spirit; for he has never loved one; *how should* he love ten thousand men?

心腸不好的人是不會有公德心的；因為他從未愛過一個人，怎麼能愛一萬個人呢？

(b) *Why should* the date of this document be omitted?

爲什麼這件公文上竟沒有簽發的日期？（表示驚疑）

7. 省略式疑問句(Elliptical Questions)

What about going now?

此刻去怎樣？

談話的語句在意義不致被誤解的範圍內，往往把疑問句的一部分省略。

(a) *What of it?* (= what does it matter?)

那有什麼關係(何妨)?

(b) *What if we should fail?* (= What will be the result if we...?)

萬一失敗怎麼辦?

(c) *What though the skies may fall?*

即使天塌下來又有什麼要緊?

(d) "*What if we are [poor]?*" said the child, boldly. "Let us be poor and happy."

“即使我們窮又有什麼關係?”那孩子毫不畏懼地說。“讓我們就窮困而愉快地生活吧。”

8. 插入疑問句(Parenthetical Questions)

The third or fourth—*which was it?*—sounded best.

第三或第四——是哪個? ——最好聽。

插入疑問句，是在談話中間關於自己所說的事徵求對方的意見時用的。

But he is not so—*so—what word do I want?*

但他不是這般——這般——我怎麼說好呢?

在談話中，有因忘了人的姓名而說 *Mr.what is his name was*

here (叫什麼名字的人來過了), 由此出現 Mr. what's-his-name, Mr. what-d' you-call-him (某人, 某氏) 等用語。

“Old *what is his name* is in a bad way.” “Barkis, do you mean?”

“某人境況很困難。” “你是指巴基斯嗎?”

9. 疑問詞不在句首

Five times *what number* makes twenty?

什麼數目的五倍是二十?

若將上句用純粹的疑問句來表示, 應該是:

What number multiplied by five makes twenty?

在口語中, 不按照語法規則, 將浮現心頭的語句放在前面, 然後再接以疑問詞的情形是常有的。例如:

Your friends, *what* will they say?

您的朋友們, 他們將怎樣說呢?

VI. 從屬疑問句(Subordinate Questions)

所謂從屬疑問句, 是指從屬於主句的疑問句, 換句話說, 就是指主從複合句中的問句, 或用疑問詞連接的名詞從句。

我們在前面曾經說過, 疑問句有(1)用疑問詞的和(2)不用疑問詞的兩類; 不用疑問詞的從屬疑問句系用 *if (whether)* 做關聯詞, 使它跟主句相連接; 它的詞序完全跟陳述句相同。但是用疑問詞的疑問句, 並不用任何的關聯詞跟主句相連結, 我們只要注意從屬疑問句的詞序和時態就行了。

(a) I said, “Is she glad?” ... I asked *if* she was glad.

(b) I said, "Who is she?"...I asked *who* she was.

我們應該注意的是：後面跟這種從屬疑問句的主句的動詞，不一定只限於表示“質疑”的動詞。例如：

I do not *know* whether you are just.

我不曉得你是不是公正。

1. if-clause; whether-clause

(a) She asked *if* (= *whether*) I had slept.

她問我睡着過沒有。

(b) No one knows *whether* he is alive *or* dead.

誰都不知道他的生死。

if = *whether or not*, 所以像上例(a)那樣將 *or not* 略去時，可以用 *if* 代替。但像 (b) 那樣作 *whether...or*, *whether or not* (或 *no*) 時，則不能用 *if* 代替。

比較 { (a) Go and tap at the door and ask her *if* (= *whether*) she is coming down for supper.
請去敲門，並問一聲她是否下來吃晚飯。
She asked *whether* (= *if*) I had slept.
她問我睡着過沒有。
(b) I do not know *whether* he will consent *or not*.
我不曉得他會不會答應。
It is hard to tell *whether* to go *or* stay.
去不去很難說。

2. 疑問詞引導

(a) She asked *how* I slept.

她問我睡得怎樣。

(b) Can you tell me *where* he has gone?

你曉得他到哪裏去了？

以從屬疑問句為賓語的主句的動詞，除了表示“質疑”的如 ask, inquire 等以外，還有表示“理解”、“感覺”的如 know, understand, see, guess, find out, hear, forget, remember 等；表示“發言”的如 tell, say, state 等以及 teach, show, try, wonder, 等等。

(a) At last I have discovered *what* true pleasure is.

我終於明白真正的快樂是什麼。

(b) That opportunity is gone; and we know not *when* it will return.

機會過去了，不知道它什麼時候再來。

(c) I wonder *how* mariners feel when the ship is sinking.

不曉得船沉沒時水手們的心情怎樣。

(d) I really wish to know *why* it snows.

我真想知道下雪的原因。

(e) In fog it is very difficult to tell *where* the sound of the horn comes from.

在霧中辨不清笛聲來自何方。

(f) I don't know *what* day of the month it is!

不知今天是幾號！

帶疑問詞的從句，有因加強語氣而放在主句之前的。例如：

(a) But *who the author was*, no one could guess.

但作者是誰，沒有人猜得出。

(b) During that day *how many times I passed in front of the theatre* I cannot say.

那一天我不知幾度經過那戲院的門前呢。

3. 用不定式

She asked me *when to come* and *how to reach* our house.
(= She asked me *when* she should come and *how* she can reach our house.)

她問我她何時可來以及怎樣走法。

帶疑問詞的從句，有採用簡潔的不定式的形式的。例如：

(a) It is very difficult to know *what to do*; what ought I to do?

(= ...what I should do; what I am to do.)

很難知道怎樣處理；我該怎麼辦呢？

(b) You should decide quickly *which to reject*.

拒絕哪項，你應該快點決定。

(c) A man who does not know *how to be angry*, does not know *how to be good*.

不知道憤怒的人，是不知道為善之道的。

用不定式的從屬疑問句，有爲了加強語氣而放在主句之前的。

例如：

To know how to learn is the great secret of success.

懂得學習方法是成功的大秘訣。

4. 省略式從屬疑問句

(a) He has gone, no one knows *where* [he has gone].

他走了，誰也不知道他到什麼地方去了。

(b) I know *what* [is to be done]!

我有辦法！

這是在聽者或讀者知道省略了什麼語句的情況之下，爲了使語言文字簡潔而用的句法。

We are estranged, and I want to know *why*. (= ..., and I want

to know *why we are estranged.*)
我們是疏遠了，我想了解這是爲什麼。

VI. 特殊的主語、賓語和名詞從句(Special Subjects, Objects & Noun Clauses)

1. 先行詞 *it*

(a) *It was splendid that you could come to-day.*

你今天能來，好極了。

(b) *What does it signify how we dress here at Cranford?*

我們克蘭福人穿什麼着什麼，對別人又有什麼關係？

(c) *It rests with you to decide.*

究竟如何，由你決定。

It 作爲形式上的主語引導名詞從句的用法：在這種情形之下，名詞從句是以 *that, what, who, which, whether* 等連接詞開始的。

(a) *It is probable that it will rain to-day.*

今天大概要下雨吧。

(b) *It does not matter whether he sees us or not.*

他是否看見我們，那都沒有關係。

(c) *It is wonderful how well he does it.*

他做得多好。

(d) *It was not clear which profession the boy was most fitted for.*

不知道哪種職業對那少年最相宜。

(e) *It is not known whether he did it or not.*

是否他幹的還不知道。

It 作為形式上的賓語引導名詞從句的用法:

(a) You may rely on *it that I shall help you.*

你可以相信我一定幫助你。

(b) See to *it that no harm comes to her.*

務必使她不受到傷害。

(c) There was no doubt about *it that he took the money.*

他拿了錢那是無疑的。

(d) It was on Wednesday, and we thought *it best that the burial should be on Friday.*

那是在星期三，而我們認為最好在星期五埋葬。

It 作為形式上的主語引導不定式短語的用法:

(a) *It is well to learn from others.*

向別人學習是好的。

(b) *It is rare for a man to attain a height of 8 feet or more.*

一個人難得有身長達八英尺以上的。

(c) *It would ill become you to praise yourself.*

自誇自讚對你不好。

“It takes to...” 這個慣用語，也屬於這種結構。例如:

(a) How long does *it take* for a [telegraphic] message *to go to Sian?*

打電報到西安去要多少時間?

(b) *It will take* you years *to speak in Chinese.*

學會講中國話要花好幾年工夫。

(c) *It will take* the hard work of long years *to clothe all our barren mountains in greenery.*

使我國全部荒山綠化，要好些年的辛勤勞動。

It 作為形式上的賓語引導不定式短語的用法:

(a) I make *it a rule to get up early.*

我以早起為常(經常早起)。

(b) I always make *it* a rule to verify all quotations.

對所有的引語都加以查對，這事我已習以為常了。

It 作為形式上的主語或賓語引導動名詞短語的用法：

(a) *It* is dangerous *playing* (= to play) *recklessly with fire*.

隨便玩火是危險的。

(b) You must find *it* rather dull *living here all by yourself*.

你在這裏獨自過活，一定覺得非常無聊吧。

(c) I suppose you think it odd *my having gone to sea*.

(= ...you think it odd for me to have gone to sea.)

我想你覺得我曾去做過水手是很奇怪的事吧。

2. 強調的 it

(a) *It* was *he* who did so.

這樣做的就是他。

(b) *It* was *here* that it happened.

這件事就發生在這裏。

這種結構是將形式上的主語 *it* 放在句首，來強調句子中的其他成分。例如上例的 *It was here that it happened*, 強調了 *here*, 如果改成普通句子就是: *Here it happened*. 或 *It happened here*.

(a) *It* was *Pasteur* who discovered that diseases are caused by living germs.

是巴斯德發現疾病由活的細菌而引起。

(b) *It* is *diligence* that makes up for deficiency.

勤能補拙。

(c) *It* was to find *Winifred* that I joined the Gypsies.

我之加入吉卜賽隊伍，是爲了尋找威尼弗萊特。

3. 複述性質的 *it*

If I get home by eight o'clock, I call *it* good luck.
我若在八點鐘前到家，那是僥幸的了。

所謂*it*的複述性質的用法，就是它可以在後續句子中代替先行的從句(如上例)或句子。

He spoke very sharply to me. I shall not forget *it* soon.
他對我說話非常刻薄，這事我是不會馬上忘記的。

下列所示的 *that* 也是同樣的用法：

(a) I must consult with him, and *that* at once.

我非和他商量不可，並且要立刻和他商量。

(b) I will know your business, Harry, *that* I will.

我要知道您有什麼事情，哈里，我非知道不可。

4. 無人稱 *it*

(a) *It* was noon and the sun was hot.

時當正午，太陽極熱。

(b) *It* has rained a good deal.

下了許多雨。

[時日]

(a) *It* was late that evening when Starkey came home.

那晚斯塔基回家已是深夜了。

(b) *It* was the middle of winter and frost lay on the ground.

時在仲冬，地上有霜。

[距離]

“How far is *it* to the nearest town, sir?”——“*It* is about six .

miles.”

“先生，到最近的市鎮有多少路？”——“大約六英里。”

[自然現象]

(a) Yesterday *it* thundered, and last night *it* lightened.

昨天打雷，昨夜有閃電。

(b) *It* is getting dark. Let us go home.

天黑了，我們回家去吧。

(c) *It* is always very cold on that lake shore in the night, but we had plenty of blankets and were warm enough.

夜裏那湖濱的天氣是極冷的，但我們有許多毯子，所以是夠暖的。

5. 名詞從句

本項所說的名詞從句是從屬陳述句、從屬祈使句以及從屬疑問句各節所述以外的從句，由 *that*, *what*, *whether*, *who*, *where*, *when*, *how*, *which*, *why* 等詞引導，在複合句中作主語、賓語或表語用。

(a) *That he is dead* seems tolerably certain.

他已逝世的事似屬確實。(作主語)

(b) I can and I will do *what I long to do*. I will be *what I desire to be*.

我能夠而且決心做自己要做的事。(作賓語) 我要做個自己理想做的人。(作表語)

(1) 作主語

(a) *That he was in error* will scarcely be disputed by his warmest friends. (= It will scarcely be disputed by his warmest friends that he was in error.)

他是錯了，他的最好的朋友們都不能否認。

(b) *Whether these ideas are well or ill founded* is not the question. (= It is not the question whether these ideas are...)

這些想法，是不是很有根據或沒有根據，不是問題所在。

(c) *Where Moses was buried* is still unknown. (= It is still unknown where...)

埋葬摩西的地點依舊不明。

(d) *Which is the best of all these ways* is uncertain. (= It is uncertain which is...)

不知這些方法之中哪種方法最好。

(e) *Why such men come to exist* is a problem. (= It is a problem why...)

怎麼會有這類人存在是個問題。

(f) *How long he will retain his championship* is, of course, a question.

他能保持多久的冠軍稱號，確是個疑問。

(g) *How, or at what hour, Mr. Watkins Tottle returned to Cecil Street* is unknown.

瓦特金·托特爾先生怎樣以及什麼時候回到西瑟爾街，沒有一個人知道。

(h) *When the steeple will be completed* depends on the weather.

尖塔何時落成，須看天氣而定。

(i) *Whatever is worth doing at all*, is worth doing well.

凡值得做的事，都值得好好地幹。

(2) 作動詞 to be 的表語

(a) That is *why we must no longer lag behind*.

那就是我們不能長此落後下去的理由。

(b) The darkest hour in any man's life is *when he sits down to*

plan how to get money without earning it.

人生最黑暗的時刻，就是坐下來算計如何不勞而獲，圖取金錢之時。

(c) *The more important question is whether she will be able to overcome the difficulties all by herself.*

她是否能獨力克服一切困難，這是更重要的問題。

(d) *What matters is how he lives.*

重要的是他的生活方式。

(3) 作賓語

(a) *Teach me how we can improve.*

請把改進的方法教給我。

(b) *I will bring what (= whatever) books I can find.*

我要把能夠找到的書籍全都帶來。

(c) *What his heart thinks, his mouth speaks.*

他心裏想什麼，口裏就說什麼。(心直口快)

(d) *Discussion arose regarding when the building should be begun.*

關於這項建築工程開工的日期引起了爭辯。

不定式短語常有跟疑問副詞(how, where 等)、連詞(whether 等)連用，而構成名詞性短語的。例如：

(a) *Whether to accept or to refuse was more than I could decide. (= Whether I should accept or refuse was...)*

該答應或該拒絕，不是我所能決定的。

(b) *How to act was a serious question. (= How he (I) should act was...)*

採取什麼行動是個嚴肅的問題。

(c) *Where to go is more than I can tell. (= Where I should go is...)*

我不曉得到哪裏去好。

(d)The trouble was *where to begin*.

困難在於開頭。

(e)The question was *how to escape without noise*.

問題是如何悄悄地逃走。

名詞性短語包括不定式短語，動名詞短語等，都是作為省略句，起名詞從句同樣的作用。

6. 動名詞代替名詞從句

(a) *Exercising one's faculties* develops them.

運用能力可以使能力得到發展。

(b)There is a great hope of *his finishing it tomorrow*. (= There is a great hope that he will finish it tomorrow.)

他明天完成這件事，很有希望。

動名詞所構成的名詞性短語有時可以代替同位語從句。

The fact of *being backed by my friends* is a great comfort. (= The fact *that I am backed by my friends* is a great comfort.)

我得到朋友的支持，非常欣慰。

全句的主語如果跟動名詞短語的主語一致，動名詞短語的主語就可省略；如果不一致，就得在動名詞短語前面加上適當的代詞或名詞。

(a)I am glad of *having met you*.

我會見你很高興。

(b)I thank you for *assembling here*.

感謝你們大家在這裏聚會。

(c)I have some suspicion of *the police having never properly searched the room*.

我懷疑警察並沒有嚴格地搜查過那個房間。

(d) Error is not a fault of our knowledge, but a mistake of *our judgment giving assent to that which is not true.*

錯誤的產生不是因為我們的知識不足，而是因我們的判斷失誤，把假的事實當成真的。

[附注] 上例(c)(d)中的 -ing 形式，有些語法學家稱為“分詞”。

7. 間接賓語在直接賓語之前；直接賓語在間接賓語之前

(a) Give *me* a book.

請給我一本書。

Mother bought *Alice* a doll.

母親買了一個布娃娃給愛麗斯。

(b) Give a penny *to the poor old man.*

請給那可憐的老人一文錢。

Father bought a ball *for Jack.*

父親給杰克買了一個球。

及物動詞有兩個賓語時，一般表示事物的叫直接賓語；表示人的叫間接賓語。例如：I give *a book to him.* 這句子中，*a book* 是直接賓語；*him* 是間接賓語。但間接賓語放在直接賓語之前時，間接賓語前面不用介詞。

(a) He made *me* a present of that book.

他把那本書當作禮物送我。

(b) Industry, not inspiration, won *him his success.*

勤勉，不是靈感，使他獲得了成功。

[比較]

She immediately offered to make tea *for me.*

她立刻說給我沏茶。

第二章

狀語結構

(Adverbial Constructions)

I. 條件(Condition)

像If it rains tomorrow, I shall not go.這類的句子，包含着兩個子句：一個是 If it rains tomorrow,另一個是 I shall not go.前者叫從句，以條件來限制或說明後者即主句中的動作或情況，所以叫做條件從句。

1. if + 直陳語氣

以 if 開始的從句，如果表示的條件是可能實現的，主句在敘述它的結論時用直陳語氣。

(a) *If you win the prize, how glad I shall be!*

你若獲得獎賞，我將怎樣高興啊！

(b) *If he comes back, what are we to do?*

他要是回來，咱們怎麼辦？

(1)現在時:

(a) *If you are right, I am wrong.*

如果您是對的，那我便錯了。

(b) *If he does it, he will be punished.*

如果他做這事，他會受到處分。

(2)將來時:

(a) I will go tomorrow, *if it is fine**.

倘若明天天氣好，我決定去。

(b) *If he is** not here by the end of the week, I shall go after him.

如果等到周末他還不來，我去找他。

條件從句所限制的主句的形式並無一定，除陳述句外，疑問句、祈使句和感嘆句都可以用。

[疑問] If you go to Philadelphia, *where shall you stay?*

你若到費城去，住在哪裏？

[祈使] *Sit here*, if you wish.

你若願坐，就請坐在這兒吧。

[感嘆] If we succeed, *what will the world say!*

要是我們成功了，世人將怎樣說哩！

if-clause 多放在句首或句尾，但簡短時可以插入主句的中間。
例如：

This process, *if it is perfected*, will revolutionize the industry.

這種製造法如果成功，將在工業上引起革命。

2. if + 虛擬語氣

虛擬語氣的 if-clause 有三種用法：

(1) 對於所敘述的假說表示懷疑；

(2) 假設跟現在的事實相反；

(3) 假設跟過去的事實相反。

(a) 現在時

(a) *If he be ill*, I shall not go.

*在這種情況下，if-clause 中的時態不用將來時，須用現在時。

他若有病，我不去了。

(b) *If it rain to-morrow, I shall not go.*

明天如果下雨，我不去了。

虛擬語氣的 *if he be ill, if it rain* 比直陳語氣的 *if he is ill* 和 *if it rains*, 對於所假設的事實更表懷疑而不敢肯定。不過這種虛擬語氣現在時已漸漸廢棄，而用直陳語氣現在時代替了。

(a) *We are both lost! Let us flee if there be yet time.*

我們兩人完了！倘使還有時間，不如逃走了吧。

(b) *If country life be healthful to the body, it is no less so to the mind.*

如果田園生活對於身體是有益的，那末它對於精神也是同樣有益的。

對於所敘述的假說表示懷疑時，除用虛擬語氣現在時外，又有用 *if ...should* 的表達法的，它的懷疑語氣更強，是“萬一……”的意思。例如：

(a) *If is should rain to-morrow, I wouldn't go.*

萬一明天下雨，我不去。

(b) *If anybody should come, say I am not at home.*

萬一有人來訪，請說聲我不在家。

(c) *If any of your family should come to my house, I shall be delighted to welcome them.*

萬一你家有人到我家來，我一定歡迎。

(b) 過去時

*If there were * no heat from the sun, everything upon the*

* 虛擬語氣過去時動詞如果是“be”，則跟人稱和數無關，一律用 *were*。

earth would quickly die of cold.

假使太陽的熱消失，那末地球上萬物就會立刻凍死。

實際上並沒有這種事實，但假定有這種事實，並以這個假說的事實作為條件，來想像它的結果，這種假說叫作虛擬語氣過去時，它是跟現實相反的。

(a) *If I could fly like the birds, I should be happy.*

我若能像鳥兒般飛翔，那我就快樂了。

(b) *Of course, I should not dream of doing so if I were not your friend.*

當然哪，如果我不是你的朋友，我做夢也不會想到這樣做的。

(c) *Had I enough time, I would go into that subject more deeply.*

我若有時間，我願意更深入地談這個問題。（可惜我現在沒有時間）

這種虛擬語氣的條件從句，不僅可以修飾陳述句，也可用來限制疑問句和驚嘆句。例如：

(a) *If I could sing like that, how happy I should be!*

倘若我能那樣歌唱，我將多麼高興呀！

(b) *What would happen, if you did not observe the rules of the road?*

倘若你不遵守交通規則，那會發生怎樣的故事？

在虛擬語氣過去時中，有用 *were to* 的形式。例如：

(a) *If he were to (=should) go, I should go with him.*

倘若他去，我將和他同去。

(b) *If I were to see a man with such a face, I should love him dearly.*

要是我遇到這種容貌的男子，我會熱烈地愛他的。

(c)過去完成時

If I had offended him, I should have regretted it.

要是我冒犯了他，那我就會覺得遺憾。(幸虧我沒有冒犯他)

表示跟過去的事實相反的假設時，以虛擬語氣過去完成時為條件從句；主句中則用“would (should, could, might 等) + 現在完成時”的形式。

(a) *If it had rained, I would not have gone.*

要是天下了雨我是不會去的。(實際未曾下雨)

(b) *I should have written yesterday if I had been well.*

倘若身體好，昨天我早就把信寫好了。(實際上有病)

(c) *If I had consulted my own interests, I should never have come here.*

如果我考慮了我自己的利益，我絕不會到這兒來的。(我並沒有考慮我自己的利益)

又有將虛擬的條件從句省略，而含蓄在修飾主語的形容詞裏面的。例如：

A true friend would have acted differently. (= A friend would have acted differently if he had been true.)

一位忠實的朋友本來就不會那樣做的。

3. if-clause 的省略式

(a) *If possible, come to-morrow. (= if it is (or be) possible, come to-morrow)*

倘若可能，請明日來。

(b) *If necessary, we must go elsewhere. (= If it is (be) necessary, we must...)*

如屬必要，我們必須到別處去。

主句的主語如果跟 if-clause 的主語相同，依據上下文的關係而能理解文意時，可將 if-clause 的主語和動詞 be 省略，而使語文簡潔，無論直陳語氣或虛擬語氣都是如此。

(a) *If (you are) in need, don't hesitate to ask me for help.*

要是困難，請勿客氣叫我幫忙。

(b) *This, if (it is) true, is sad.*

這事如果屬實，那是可悲的。

(c) *Every gift, though it be small, is in reality great if (it be) given with affection.*

不論什麼禮物，若是寄予情誼的，那末即使極小，實際上也是極大的（禮物）。

注意如下的 if-clause 是讓步從句：

There is little, if any, difference between them.

二者之間即使有差別，也是極微的。

4. 略去 if 而將動詞或助動詞放在主語之前

Were he my friend, I should expect his help. (= If he were my friend,...)

如果他是我的朋友，我就會得到他的幫助了。（可惜他不是我的朋友）

表示跟事實相反的假設的 if-clause 的 if 有時常被省略，這時動詞或助動詞一概放在主語之前，這種表達方式為虛擬語氣過去時和虛擬語氣過去完成時所特有。

(a) *Should it rain (=If it should rain) to-morrow, I shall not go.*

萬一明天下雨，我不去。

(b) *Had I* (= If I had) *the time*, I would go.

如果有時間，我就去。

(c) *Had he been* (= If he had been) *my friend*, I should have expected his help.

假使他是我的朋友，我就會得到他的幫助了。

5. *unless* (= if ... not)

(a) Don't come *unless* I call.

我沒有叫你來，你不要來。

(b) Men do less than they ought, *unless* they do all that they can.

人若不盡全力，那就是沒有做到應做的事。

unless 是“如果不…”的意思，表示“條件”。

(a) Books are but waste paper *unless* we spend in action the wisdom we get from thought.

如果不把從(前人的)思想吸取的智慧應用在實際行動上，書籍只不過是廢紙罷了。

(b) *Unless* I hear the contrary, I will be here.

如果沒有相反的指示，我就留在這裏。

Unless-clause 跟 *if*-clause 一樣，當主語和主句中的主語相同時，主語和動詞往往省略。例如：

The child is never peevish, *unless* (it is) sick.

這孩子如果不生病，是絕不吵吵鬧鬧的。

6. *but for* (= without)

(a) *But for* (= without) the dreams of the youth, this invention might have been postponed for a century.

倘若沒有這個青年的種種幻想，這項發明也許要延遲一個世紀。

(b) He is, in fact, *but for* his years and size, rather like a very impetuous baby.

其實，若不是因為他的年齡和身材已大，他很有些像一個急躁的嬰兒。

But for 是 *without* , *were it not for* 的意思，是構成虛擬語氣條件從句的特異短語。它有代替虛擬語氣過去時和虛擬語氣過去完成時兩種用法，要識別它究竟代替哪一種，可以從主句的動詞的時態看出。

(a) *But for* (= If it were not for) the thick trees, the bitter wind would blow the house to pieces. (= If there were not the thick trees,...)

要是沒有繁茂的樹林，狂風會把屋子吹倒的。

(b) *But for* (= If it had not been for) him, it never would have taken place.

如果沒有他，這事便決不會發生。

7. *but that* (= *but for the fact that*)

We should have come, *but that* we had an accident.

(= We should have come, *but for* an accident.)

如果無事故，我們早已來了。

But for 所引導的是短語，而 *but that* 所引導的則是從句。

(a) *But that he has a family*, he would have left England long ago. (= *But for* his family = If he had no family, he would...)

倘若沒有家屬，他早已離開英國了。

(b) I would not have praised you, *but that you love physical labour*.

要是你不愛體力勞動，我是不會讚揚你的。

跟前項的 *but for* 和 *but that* 同義而可以代替的，是 *if it were not for*（虛擬語氣過去時）與 *if it had not been for*（虛擬語氣過去完成時）的句式。

(a) Your flesh, that feels so soft, would be hard and dry *if it were not for* (= *but for*) the water in it.

你們的非常柔軟的肌肉，要是裏面沒有水分，就會堅硬而乾燥。

(b) *Had it not been for* (= *But for*) these setbacks, we might, perhaps, have realized our dream.

倘若沒有這些挫折，我們的夢想也許已經實現了。

8. *in case (that); in case of* (= *if; in the event of*)

(a) *In case it rains* (= *If it rains*), I will not come.

天如下雨，我不來了。

(b) *In case of rain*, telephone me.

如果下雨，請打電話給我。

這種句子，有時被省略成如下的形式：

(a) *In that case* we must try to get on without you.

假使這樣的話，我們只有在沒有你的情況下繼續進行下去。

(b) I should like to take it by the month, *in which case* (= *in that case*) you make a reduction, I suppose?

我想按月租用，這樣可以打個折扣吧？

如要比 *in case of* 更濃厚地表示偶發性（不確實性），就用 *in the event of*。

(a) *In the event of* unfavourable weather the match may be postponed until another date.

倘若天氣惡劣，這次比賽也許將推遲到另一天。

(b) *In the event of* fire breaking out the place is so small that it would be difficult to get out.

如果發生火災的話，這地方極其狹窄，恐怕難以逃出。

9. provided (that) (= on condition that)

(a) I will come, *provided that* you do.

要是你來，我也來。

(b) I will come, *provided I am well enough*.

倘身體好，我要來的。

(c) *Provided that all is safe*, you may depart.

倘若一切安全的話，你可以走了。

這種形式的條件從句，大都是書面語。

Provided (that) 也可用 *providing (that)* 來代替：

I will come *providing (that)* I have time.

如果有時間，我願意來。

跟 *provided (that)* 的形式相似的，是以 *on condition (that)* 為連詞的從句：

(a) You can have it for a few days *on condition (that)* you return it next week some time.

如果在下週內歸還，我可借給你幾天。

(b) At last, touched by her plaint, the fisherman consents to return the feather suit, *on condition that* the fairy shall dance and play heavenly music for him.

漁人終於為仙女的悲嘆所感動，在仙女為他跳舞和奏天上的

音樂的條件之下，答應把羽衣還她。

10. 祈使語氣 + and

Turn to the right and you will see the house.

向右轉彎，你就可以看見那座房子了。

這是將“條件”包含在普通的祈使句中，用 *and* 來下結論的表達法。

(a) *Talk less and work more, and your success will be assured.*

少講話多做事，你們一定成功。

(b) *Give him an inch, and he'll take a mile.*

他是得寸進尺的。

名詞 + and

在祈使句中有時將動詞略去，僅保留強勢語，用 *and* 跟主句相接，成“名詞 + *and*...”的形式。例如：

One more word, and I will turn you out of doors. (= Say one more word, and...)

再說一句語，我就把你趕出門去。

11. 祈使語氣 + or (else)

(a) *Hide, or he will catch you. (= If you do not hide, he will...)*

快躲起來，不然他會把你抓住的。

(b) *Take care, or else you will fall.*

當心一點，否則你會摔跤的。

這種句子的意義正和“祈使語氣 + *and*”相反，換句話說，“祈使語氣 + *and*”是敘述肯定的條件；而“祈使語氣 + *or (or else)*”則是敘述否定的條件(*if not = unless*)。

(a) When a secretary of Washington, excusing himself for being late, said that his watch was too slow, the reply of Washington was, "You must get a new watch, *or* I must get a new secretary."

華盛頓的秘書替自己遲到辯護，說是他的錶走得太慢了。華盛頓的回答是：“你若不買一隻新錶，那我就非用新秘書不可了。”

(b) Faith must have adequate evidence, *else* it is mere superstition.

信仰如果沒有充分的證據，那不過是迷信而已。

12. granting that; let it be granted that

(a) *Granting that* it is so, what follows? (= If we grant that...)

假若如此，事情會怎樣呢？

(b) *Let it be granted that* it is so, what follows?

如果如此，事情會怎樣呢？

Granting that... 這種分詞構句，也是以假設作條件。除 *granting* 以外，還有 *granted*, *assuming*, *supposing* 等，因常以泛指一般人的 *we*, *you*, *one* 做主語，所以這些代詞總是被省略的，這是這種句式的特徵。如果主語是第三人稱，則用 *let* 的形式來表示，意義與 *granting that* 相同。

Assuming (that) you are a traveller, an inn-keeper is bound to receive you at any hours of day or night.

假如你是旅客，那末不論晝夜什麼時刻，旅館老板都得招待你住宿。

13. suppose (that)

Suppose it rains, what shall we do?

假使下雨，我們怎麼辦？

也有用分詞“supposing (that)”的。例如：

Supposing (that) it rains, we can take shelter in the station.

(= If we suppose (that) it rains,...)

假如天下雨，我們可在車站躲雨。

14. 獨立分詞結構 (Nominative Absolute)

We shall sail on Monday, *weather permitting* (= if weather permits).

天氣允許的話，我們將在星期一開船。

所謂獨立分詞結構是指從句另有一個主語，跟主句中的主語不同。這種表示“條件”的分詞結構，可以看作條件從句的省略形式。

Circumstances allowing, we shall further improve our working methods.

情況允許的話，我們還要進一步改善我們的工作方法。

15. whether ... or (not)

(a) It does not matter to a great actor what part he plays, *whether* it be that of a king *or* a beggar.

對於一位名演員來說，不論他所扮的角色是國王或是乞丐，都可以演得很出色。

(b) He is determined to buy that car, *whether* you approve *or* not.

不論你同意與否，他已決定買那輛車了。

這種句子是敘述兩個或兩個以上的條件，表示對兩者都不介意的。

My novels, whether (they are) good *or* bad, have been as good as I could make them.

我的小說不論好壞如何，都是盡我的全力寫的。

如果第二個選擇是否定的，大體有兩種形式：

(a) *Whether* you believe it *or not*, it's truth.

無論你信不信，那總是事實。

(b) She had to go, *whether or not* she wanted it.

無論她願意不願意，她總得去。

16. *otherwise* (= *or*)

Hide, *otherwise* he will catch you.

躲起來吧，否則他會把你捉住的。

連詞 *otherwise* 是明確地表示不實行上文指出的條件所導致的後果。它的用法比 *or* 稍微強調些。

(a) We had better stay at home, *otherwise* we shall get wet.

我們還是留在家裏好；要不然，我們便要淋濕了。

(b) I am engaged; *otherwise* I would accept.

我已有了先約；否則我是會接受的。

(c) We must make haste, *otherwise* we shall be too late.

不趕快走，我們就要太晚了。

如果用 *else* 或 *or else* 來代替 *otherwise*，那末語氣就比較婉轉些。例如：

(a) Seize the chance, *else* you will regret it.

不要放過機會，否則你會後悔的。

(b) I must start at once, *or else* I shall miss my train.

我必須馬上出發，否則就會趕不上火車。

17. 不定式短語

(a) It would hurt us *to act hastily*. (= ... If we were to act hastily.)

倉促從事會對我們不利。

(b) *To tell the truth*, he is no fool.

說實話，他決不是傻瓜。

不定式短語也可以用來表示“條件”。這種不定式短語沒有表明主語，它在意義上的主語跟主句的主語不同，所以這種不定式短語在語法上跟句子的別的部分並沒有什麼關係，就是所謂獨立不定式；既可以放在句子的開頭或末尾，也可以放在句子的中間。

(a) You are, *to put it plainly*, very much in error.

老實說，你是大錯特錯了。

(b) *To take an illustration*, the case is something like this.

打個比方，情形大致是這樣的。

(c) It was a bolt from the blue, *so to speak*.

這可以說是晴天霹靂。

18. 分詞短語

(a) The number did not exceed, *roughly speaking*, 60 or 70.

大約說來，那數目不超過六十或七十。

(b) *Seen from an aeroplane*, this would look like a great green sea. (= If it were seen from ..., this ...)

若從飛機上看來，這像一個廣大的碧綠的海。

分詞短語，在語法上作為插入成分的時候，也可以用來表示“條

件”。

(a) This same thing, *happening* (= if it should happen) *in war time*, would amount to disaster.

這樣的事如果在戰時發生，就會造成慘禍。

(b) *Viewed* (= If it is viewed) *in this light*, the necessity of labour is not a chastisement, but a blessing—the very root and spring of all that we call progress in individuals and civilization in a nation.

倘若用這樣的觀點來看，必要的勞動並非懲罰，乃是幸福——就是我們在個人稱為進步，在民族稱為文明的一切東西的根源。

19. 介詞十動名詞

In so doing, you will be greatly disappointed.

如果這樣做，你會大失所望。

在介詞後加上動名詞，也可以表示“條件”。

(a) How many critics would be able, *on being shown this drawing*, to say from whose pencil it had emanated?

如果把這畫給批評家們看看，有幾位能說得出它是出自誰的手筆呢？

(b) If there is anything in my power to grant, you may command me, and I shall feel great pleasure *in complying* with your wishes.

假使你有什麼事情在我權力範圍內可以辦到的話，那就請吩咐我吧；要是滿足了你的願望，我便會感到非常歡喜的。

20. once-clause

Once we give ourselves up, we are totally lost.(= If once we give....)

要是我們一旦自暴自棄，那就一切都完了。

連詞 *once* 作為 *if once* 之省略，可以構成條件從句。

(a)*Once this is (= If this is once) accomplished, all will be well.*

這事如一旦成功，便萬事大吉了。

(b)*The matter, once I gave up writing novels, was not so very difficult.*

我一放棄寫小說，事情就不那麼難辦了。

這種句子常把主語和動詞省略。例如：

(a)*Once (= If it were once) lost, it would be hard to find.*

如果一旦失去，便不容易找到了。

(b)*But once(= if they are once) formed, these crystals change no further.*

但若一經結晶，這些結晶體便不再起變化了。

21. without; with

Without moving your lips, you cannot speak.

不動嘴唇，便不能說話。

(a)*Without (= If we have no) faith we can do nothing.*

沒有信心，我們將一事無成。

(b)*Without labour nothing prospers.*

若不勞動，任何事業都不會繁榮。

跟 *without* 相反的 *with* 也常表示“條件”。例如：

With change of place we change our ideas; nay, our opinions and feelings.

如果改變了地位，思想也隨着轉變；而且，見解和感情也都變了。

22. 表示願望的 if-clause

(a) Oh, *if* it were only true!

啊，要是真的，那就好了！

(b) *If* I had only known!

我早知道就好了！

這種 if-clause 的句式，省去主句，表示的是一種願望。

II . 原因或理由(Cause or Reason)

這種從句是從原因或理由方面說明主句中動詞所表示的動作或情況的，連詞有 because, for, as, since 等。現在把這些連詞在用法上的不同一一舉例說明如下。

1. because

(a) He does it *because* he thinks it right, not *because* he likes doing it.

他做這件事並非由於愛好，而是因為他覺得那是正確的。

(b) *Because* certain diseases are infectious, it is necessary to isolate the persons suffering from them.

因為某些疾病是會傳染的，隔絕這種病人實屬必要。

Because 這個詞，像它的詞源 by + cause 所示，是特別着重於 cause 時用的，在表示“原因”或“理由”的連詞中語氣最強。它放在句首時，語氣比放在句尾更強。

(a) I am provoked at your children, not that they didn't behave well, but *because* they left us too early.

我對你的孩子們生氣，並非他們的舉止不好，而是因為他們走得太早了。

(b) He will succeed *because* he is in earnest.

他一定會成功，因為他很認真。

這種句子，又有和修飾整個從句的副詞連用的，例如 *merely* (simply, just) *because* 等。

(a) I am not apt to shrink from that which is my duty, *merely because* it is painful.

我並不只因為怕吃苦而動輒規避自己的義務。

(b) Do not read books *simply because* other people are reading them.

不要只因別人在讀某些書而就去讀那些書。

凡對 why? 的質問作答時，只能用 *because*-clause:

“Why don't you do as you are told?”——“*Because* I don't choose to [do so].”

“爲什麼不照吩咐你的話去做？”——“因爲我不高興〔那樣做〕。”

Because-clause 也有改用短語 *because of* 的。這時緊跟在後面的，自然是名詞或動名詞。但若用 *because of the fact that...*，那末後面也該用從句。

(a) He was absent *because of* illness. (= ...because of the fact that he was ill.)

他因病缺席。

(b) I said nothing about it, *because of* his wife('s) *being* there.

(=... because of the fact that his wife was there.)

我沒有提及這件事，因為他的妻子在場。

2. for

(a) He could not go; *for* he was ill.

他不能去，因為他病了。

(b) My brother wears eye-glasses, *for* he is near-sighted.

我的兄弟戴眼鏡，因為他是近視眼。

Because 和 for 的比較: because 是表示無可懷疑的當然確鑿的理由時所用; 而 for 則是說話者表示自己的意見，作先行文的說明時用的。

(a) Show me the man you honour, and I will know what kind of a man you are, *for* it shows me what your ideal of manhood is, and what kind of a man you long to be.

把你所尊敬的人告訴我，那我就會明白你的爲人了。因為我由此得以知道你對做人的理想和你渴望成爲何種人物。

(b) Almost all London is built of bricks, with the exception of some public buildings, *for* stone is scarce and dear in England.

除若干公共建築物以外，倫敦全市的房子幾乎都是用磚建造的; 這是因爲英國石頭少而貴的緣故。

(c) Make no display of your talents or attainments; *for* every one will clearly see, admire, acknowledge them, so long as you cover them with the beautiful veil of modesty.

不要誇耀自己的才能和成就，只要顯示出美好的謙虛就行，因爲人們會清楚地看出你的才能和成就並加以承認和讚許的。

3. as

(a) *As* rain has fallen, the air is cooler.

因天下過雨，空氣比較涼爽。

(b) Let us go to bed, *as* it is now late.

時候不早了，我們去睡吧。

以 *as* 開始的從句，是表示那幾乎可說是不言而喻的原因或理由。它可以放在句首，也可以放在主句的後面。後者語氣較前者為弱。*As* 有時含有 *since* 的意思，有時含有 *for* 的意思，但它不像 *for* 那麼輕；也不像 *since* 那麼重。

(a) I am going to bed, *as* (=for) I'm very tired.

我疲倦得很，準備睡覺了。

(b) *As* (=since) he could not live by his pen, Cervantes secured a minor governmental position.

塞萬提斯不能靠寫作過活，就找了個小公務員的職位。

4. since

Since (=As) he was not there, I spoke to his brother.

他不在那裏，所以我對他的兄弟說了。

Since 是 seeing that, because 的意思；但 *because* 是表示較強的原因，*as* 是表示較弱的原因，而 *since* 則介於兩者之間，是表示根據推理的理由時用的。至於 *since*-clause 的位置，有放在句首的，也有放在句尾的。放在句首時語氣較強。

Since there is no help, come let us shake hands and part.

既然無法可想，那咱們就握手告別吧。

Since-clause 的意義，可以用 *so*-clause 來表達。例如：

Since my friends will not help me, I must help myself. (= My friends will not help me, *so* I must help myself.)

既然朋友們不肯幫助我，那我就必須自助。

5. *Inasmuch as*

Inasmuch as you have confessed, I will not punish you.

既然你已經坦白了，我也就不罰你了。

Inasmuch as 和 *since*, *because*, *seeing that* 的意義相同，而比較更為正式些，現只用於書面語。

(a) *Inasmuch as* the debtor has no property, I abandon my claim.

既然債務人沒有財產，我放棄我的要求了。

(b) *Inasmuch as* the outstanding individual is a son of the people and possesses a profound knowledge of their needs and requirements, he can play a great part in determining the course of history.

既然這位傑出的人物是人民的兒子，他就深深地懂得人民的需要和要求，所以他能在決定歷史的進程上起着重大的作用。

6. 分詞短語

(a) *Having had no answer*, I wrote again.

因為沒有回音，我又寫了一封信。

(b) I am unable to help the poor fellow, *being obliged to borrow myself*.

因為自己都在借債，所以我不能幫助這個可憐的人。

分詞有現在分詞和過去分詞兩種，這兩種分詞都可以用來修飾

動詞，作狀語用。作狀語用的分詞短語有種種用法，但這裏所說的，以表示“原因”或“理由”者為限。

(a) People have trusted me, *knowing* (= because they know) that I am an honest man.

因為人們曉得我是個誠實的人，所以一直相信我。

(b) *Having been* a little in that line myself, I understood it.

我自己曾經短時期幹過這個行業，所以我了解這種工作。

(c) I did not feel inclined to go forth into the wintry storm, but, *having set* my mind on reaching the village that night, I was loath to turn back.

我不想闖進冬季的暴風雨裏去，只因想要那晚到達那個村莊，所以不願中途折回了。

分詞短語的時態，從形式上看，可以分為現在時（如 *being*, *knowing* 等）和完成時（如 *having been*, *having known* 等）兩種。假使它所談到的事情跟主句所談到的事情是同時發生的，就用現在時；假使它所談到的事情發生在主句所談到的事情以前，那就不用完成時。

現在時可以用來指現在的動作或情況，也可以用來指過去的動作或情況，這要由主句的動詞的時態來決定。例如：

(a) *Being* sick, I *cannot* go. (= As I am sick, I cannot go.)

我因有病不能去。

(b) *Being* sick, I *could* not go. (= As I was sick, I could not go.)

我因有病不能去。

(c) As we walked homeward, Scott, *being* (= as he was) a little fatigued, laid his left hand on Tom's shoulder, and leaned heavily for support.

在歸途中，司各脫因略感疲乏，將左手搭在湯姆的肩上，吃

力地依靠他來架着自己。

分詞完成時相等於現在完成時，也可以相等於過去完成時，這可以從主句的動詞時態上看出來。例如：

(a) *Having been* (= As I have been) sick so much, I *have learned* to take good care of my health.

因為病得很厲害，所以知道保重身體了。

(b) *Having been* (= As they had been) poor, they *knew* the trials of poverty.

因為貧窮，所以知道貧窮的苦楚。

表示被動的意味時，不能用現在分詞而要用過去分詞。

(a) She is quite a different woman now, (being) *deprived of her child*.

因為喪失了孩子，她現已完全變了樣。

上例 *deprived of her child* 就是過去分詞短語，也是表示“原因”的，不過它是被動的意味。倘若將表示被動意味的 *being* 補入，意義就更清楚了。

(b) *Left* (= Being left) *uncared for*, the farm soon became a wilderness.

因為置之不顧，農場不久就荒蕪了。

(c) The crowd, (being) *terrified*, ran off, all but one man.

羣衆除一人外，其餘的都因驚恐而逃走了。

又有一種跟上述的分詞短語相似的句式，從語法上看，它是省略了現在分詞 *being* 的形式，也是表示“原因”的。

(a) (Being) *Fatally ill*, the boy was carried home to the big house.

那少年因病重被抬回到那大房子去了。

(b) (Being) *Totally unacquainted* with the measure of our strength, we undertook all.

因為我們完全不知道自己的力量，所以全部承擔下來了。

(c) (Being) *Naturally inquisitive creatures*, bears are always attracted by the smell of sweet things.

熊是天性好奇的動物，所以常被甘餌的香味所引誘。

這種短語不一定放在句首，也有放在主語之後，當作插入語用的。這種句式，可以看作表示“原因”或“理由”的 who-clause 的變形。例如：

Irma, *fatally ill* (= who was fatally ill), sent for Doctor Gunther.

埃麥因病勢沉重，派人去請甘瑟醫師。

7. 獨立分詞結構

(a) *Human nature being what it is*, perhaps the outcome was inevitable.

人性既是如此，這事的結果或許是必然的。

(b) She could say no more, *her rising sobs choking her*.

她一陣陣抽咽，使得她再也說不下去。

所謂獨立分詞結構，就是分詞獨自有一個主語，跟主句的主語不同。這種結構也可表示“原因”或“理由”，用來修飾主句的動詞。它也有現在時和完成時兩種形式；如主句的動詞的時態是過去時，則獨立分詞結構的現在時也表示過去時；完成時分詞表示先於主句的時態即過去完成時。

(a) Anne read a new book, *it being* (= as it was) a rainy day.

因為是雨天，安妮讀了一本新書。

(b) *There being* (= As there were) no taxis, we had to walk.

因為沒有出租汽車，我們只好步行。

(c) Soon after leaving the city night came on, and *the tide run-*

ning against us, we had to anchor. (= ..., and as the tide ran against us, ...)

駛出了那個城市以後，不久夜就降臨了，因有潮水逆我們而來，所以只得停泊下來。

(d) *The rain having* (= As the rain had) *ruined* my hat, I had to buy a new one.

因我的帽子被雨所毀，我非買一頂新的不可了。

用過去分詞的獨立分詞結構，是由省略那表示被動語態的 *being* 和 *having been* 而產生的句式。

(a) He came home, *his job (being) done*. (= He came home, as his job was done.)

他回家來了，因為工作已完畢了。

(b) *The strike (having been) called*, the leaders awaited developments. (= As the strike had been called, the leaders...)

因為已發動了罷工，領導人等待着它的發展。

又有跟上述的句式相似，用形容詞或名詞開始的獨立語句，這些也是省略 *being* 的句式。例如：

(a) *Supper (being) ready*, we came to the table. (= As supper was ready, we...)

因晚餐已預備好，我們便向餐桌走去。

(b) *The first play (being) a success*, he wrote another. (= As the first play was a success, he...)

他因第一個劇本得到成功，所以再寫一個。

8. 不定式短語

I went in there and was shocked *to find* your grandfather dead. (= ...was shocked at finding your ...)

我走進那裏，見你祖父已死而震驚。

表示“原因”或“理由”的不定式短語有兩個特徵：第一，它的前面一般是表示感情的用語，如(1)驚愕 (to be surprised, to be astonished, to be shocked 等)，(2)悲哀 (to be sorry, to be grieved 等)，(3)喜悅 (to be glad, to be delighted, to rejoice, to be pleased 等)；第二，它是以視聽 (to find, to see, to hear 等)，報道 (to say, to inform 等)等詞開始的。

(a) We are grieved *to inform* you that our master died a few days ago.

我們的老師於日前逝世，謹此哀啟。

(b) I was vexed *to find* that you had called yesterday while I was out.

昨天您來看我，我不在家，遺憾得很。

(c) Our guide was plainly disappointed *not to find* him in.

我們的領路者因見他不在，面露失望的神色。

(d) A man should never be ashamed *to own* he has been in the wrong, which is but saying, in other words, that he is wiser today than he was yesterday.

決不要以承認錯誤為恥；換句話說，承認錯誤只等於說今天比昨天聰明罷了。

9. that-clause

(a) I am glad *that he came*. (= I am glad because he came.)

我因他來而覺得高興。

(b) I am sorry *that he is going*.

我因他離去而感到難過。

That-clause 也有表示“原因”或“理由”的用法。這種從句在形式上跟普通的名詞從句一樣，但意義不同，這一點須特別注意。

(a) I am delighted *that* I came, for things promise to be interesting. (= I am delighted at my coming,...)

因為情況可望大有裨益，我為到此而感欣喜。

(b) I am ashamed *that* you should be so cowardly.

你竟如此懦怯，我為之羞恥。

10. 用關係代詞或關係副詞引導的從句

Sailors, *who* (= because they) *are usually superstitious*, are unwilling to leave port on Friday.

船員通常是很迷信的，所以他們不願在星期五啓航。

這種用關係代詞引導的從句，在形式上是修飾先行詞；但從意義上判斷，乃是表示“原因”或“理由”的從句中的一種。

(a) But I accept your apology, *which* (= as it) was a very proper one to make.

但我接受你的辯解，因為那是極其正當的。

(b) There was no difficulty in finding the city, *whose* (= because its) smoke was discernible 60 miles away.

要找到那城市是不難的，因為它的烟在六十英里以外就可望見。

(c) Men best show their character in trifles, *where* (= because in them) they are not on their guard.

因為人們不拘小節，所以他們的性格在小節中表現得最為明顯。

下面幾句中的從句，從結構上看，也可以看作“讓步從句”，但從意義上分析，也可以看作是表示“原因”的。

(a) *Sanza, brave soldier that he was* (= who was a brave soldier; as he was a brave soldier), scorned to strike a fallen foe, and bade him rise and fight again.

桑查是勇敢的武士，所以不屑攻擊已經倒地的敵人，叫他站起來再鬥。

(b) *Tom, curious little rogue that he was* (= who [because he] was a curious little rogue), must needs go and see what it was.

湯姆因為是個好奇的乖孩子，所以非去看個明白不可。

(c) *My uncle, true savant that he was*, deemed the phenomenon important and worth a nearer view.

因我的叔父是個篤實的學者，所以認為這種現象是重要而值得作更仔細的觀察的。

11. 介詞+動名詞

She admires you *for being* always good-tempered.

她因你性格溫良而傾慕你。

(a) A man is called selfish, not *for pursuing* his own good, but *for neglecting* his neighbor's.

人被認為自私自利，並非因為追求自己的福利，而是因為不顧鄰人的福利。

(b) She will not think the worse of you *for being* simply dressed.

她不會因為你衣着樸素而瞧不起你的。

12. for fear of + 動名詞; for fear that

(a) She sent me *for fear of your tiring* yourself.

她因怕你勞累而派我來。

(b) He did not go *for fear that* he should get lost.

他因為怕迷路未曾去。

For fear of 之後跟動名詞短語; for fear that 之後跟從句, 但也有將 that 這詞略去, 或在 for [in] fear 之後用 lest 來代替 that 的。
例如:

(a) I cannot sleep at night now *for fear* I shall be attacked.

我因怕被人襲擊, 目前連夜裏也不能睡覺。

(b) So we came to the island of the wild goats, where we found our comrades, who indeed had waited long for us *in sore fear lest* we had perished.

於是我們來到野山羊的島上, 在那裏我們碰見了自己的伙伴, 實在他們等待我們已久, 深恐我們已經死了。

動名詞的主語如果跟主句的主語相同, 那末 for fear of 之後不要加代詞。例如:

He dared not fire *for fear of* hitting someone.

他因怕擊中別人, 所以不敢射擊。

13. 介詞短語

(a) You have acted *from worthy motives*.

你的行為是動機純正的。

(b) Very few foreigners travel in Sweden in the winter *on account of* the intense cold.

因為氣候酷寒, 冬天去瑞典旅行的外國人極少。

表示“原因”或“理由”的介詞短語有兩種: 一種以介詞開始, 如上例(a); 另一種是以介詞短語開始, 如上例(b)。前者有 for, from, through, with 等; 後者有 on account of, owing to, in con-

sequence of, by reason of, thanks to, in view of 等。(上述的介詞短語，倘若在後面加 the fact that, 那末也可以引導狀語從句。例如 on account of the intense cold = on account of the fact that it was intensely cold)

(a) They had, *for* pure wantonness, set fire to some of the houses.

他們出於純粹暴亂的原因，放火燒了幾所房子。

(b) This calamity has happened *through* no fault of mine.

這場災禍不是因我的過失而發生的。

(c) I sorrowed *at* his captive state.

我為他被俘的境遇而感到悲傷。

(d) He was unfitted for the post *seeing* his youth and inexperience.

他年輕而又沒有經驗，所以這職務對他是不合適的。

Seeing 這個詞不僅可作介詞，後面跟短語；也可作連詞，後面跟從句。例如：

I ate my bread with a good appetite, *seeing* I had earned it with a good will.

因為是靠努力勞動獲得的，所以我吃麵包吃得非常有味。

(e) The others are shivering *with* cold and I can't stay here all night.

別人都因寒冷在發抖，我不能終夜留在這裏。

(f) *Owing to* natural calamity, crops were short last year.

去年因自然災害而歉收。

(g) *Thanks to* your timely assistance, we were able to finish the work.

幸虧有了你的及時支援，我們才把這樁工作做完了。

(h) In consequence of this accident he lost his situation.

他因這事故而失掉了職位。

(i) *In view of* the shortage of coal in their country they have to find, sooner than other peoples, new sources of energy.

因為他們的國家缺煤，他們必須比別國人民更快地去尋找新能源。

(j) We coasted the land which did lie east and west, not being able to come near the shore *by reason of* the great quantity of ice.

因為冰非常之多，我們的船沿着那東西伸展的陸地航行，不能近岸。

14. what with... and what with

What with the cold *and what with* the rain, we were miserable.

因天冷而又下雨，我們真狼狽不堪。

What with 的意義和前項的 *with* 相同，只是語氣比較強些。它常用 *what with...and* 的簡略形式。

(a) *What with* illness *and what with* losses, the poor man is almost ruined.

因為疾病和生意虧蝕，這個可憐的人已瀕於破產了。

(b) *What with* official business *and* private business, I have no leisure.

因為公務和私事，我忙得不可開交。

15. in that

In that he is ill, he feels unable to do it.

他因病覺得不能做那件事。

(a) He differed from his colleagues *in that* he devoted his spare time to reading.

他把業餘時間都用在學習上，在這一點他跟他的同事不同。

(b) The rise of Davy was all the more brilliant *in that* he had not had much schooling.

大衛的晉昇因他未曾受過多少教育而越顯得難得。

16. lest

Tom dared not stir *lest* he should be seen.

湯姆因怕被人看見，連動也不敢動。

(a) I was fearful *lest* my hostess should suggest the medieval church as a topic.

我生怕女主人提出中世紀教會來作話題。

(b) We all dismounted and sent the horses to a considerable distance, *lest* they should, by some noise, disturb the elephants.

我們一齊下了馬，將馬牽到很遠的地方，因為害怕它們的喧嘩聲擾亂了象的安寧。

17. whereas (=seeing that)

Whereas our president has tendered his resignation, therefore be it resolved...

會長已提出辭呈，故決議……。

表示“原因”的連接詞 *whereas*（由於，因為），在現代英語裏，概用於決議書、公文和法律條文。

Whereas the said tenant damaged the property, he is required

to pay...

該租用人毀損該項財產，故應賠償……。

III. 結果(Result)

表示“結果”的句法，主要可分為兩種：(1)並列的；(2)從屬的。前者以並列連詞 *so*, *accordingly*, *therefore* 等開始；後者則用從屬連詞 *so that*, *that*, *whence*, *wherefore* 等將從句接在主句之後。此外又有用不定式或介詞短語來表示的。

(A) 並列結構 (Co-ordinate Constructions)

1. *so* (= *therefore*)

(a) This rain is not likely to stop for some time, *so* we had better hurry home.

這雨好像一時不會停的，所以我們還是趕快回家去吧。

(b) There was no one there, *so* I went away.

那邊一個人也沒有，所以我走了。

(c) Willows need a great deal of water and *so* we find them growing near the streams.

柳樹需要多量的水分，所以生長在河邊。

2. *accordingly* (= *so*)

(a) I am satisfied; *accordingly* I will pay.

我很滿意，所以願意付款。

(b) The thing had to be done. *Accordingly* we did it.

這事非做不可，所以我們做了。

3. therefore (= so)

(a) All men are mortal; Caesar is a man, *therefore* Caesar is mortal.

凡人都是要死的；凱撒是人，所以凱撒也是要死的。

(b) He was considerably younger and, *therefore*, much more pompous and stately than Warrington.

他比華林頓年輕得多，所以也比他漂亮魁偉。

4. consequently (= as a result)

Important matters demand my attention, *consequently* I shall not sail to-day.

我有幾件重要事務要處理，所以今天不動身了。

Consequently 也有用成語 *in consequence*, *by consequence* 來代替的。例如：

I refuse to pay some damages, and am here *in consequence*.

我不肯支付賠償金，因而來到這裏。

He... was nephew to Mrs. Thistlewood, and, *by consequence*, own cousin to Miss Helen.

他……是西斯爾伍德太太的外甥，因此他與海倫小姐是嫡親的表兄妹。

5. then (= so)

(a) If he is honest, *then* his word is true.

假如他是誠實的，那末他的話也是真實的。

(b) You have eaten nothing? *Then* you must be hungry.

你還沒有吃飯麼？那你一定餓了。

6. hence (thence) (= therefore)

(a) Boyle discovered it; *hence* it is called Boyle's law.

這是波義耳所發現的，所以叫做波義耳定律。

(b) A vast and lofty hall was the great audience chamber of the Moslem monarch, *thence* called the Hall of the Ambassadors.

穆斯林皇帝的大接見廳是宏偉而巍峨的，因而稱為大使廳。

7. thus (= accordingly)

(a) John weighs 190 pounds. He is *thus* the heaviest boy in his school.

約翰體重一百九十磅，所以他是全校最重的學生。

(b) His uncle had been persuaded by the monks of Fountain Abbey to leave all his property to the Church, *and thus* poor Robin had to shift for himself.

他的伯父相信了方丹修道院的僧侶的話，把他的全部財產捐贈給教會了，所以可憐的羅賓只得自行謀生了。

8. as a result (= consequently)

As a result English exports have been, as it were automatically, reduced.

結果英國的輸出好像自動地減少了。

9. with the result [consequence] that

When the owner refused, the soldier used his knife *with the result that* the Austrian citizen was taken to hospital unconscious.

當主人加以拒絕時，這個士兵就動起刀來，結果那個奧地利公民被抬到醫院去，不省人事了。

(B)從屬結構 (Subordinate Constructions)

10. *so that* (= *so*)

(a) The day is cloudy, *so that* (= *so*) we cannot take good pictures.

天氣陰晦，因而拍不好照片。

(b) The climate of Egypt is always mild, *so that* killing frosts never occur.

埃及的氣候是終年溫和的，因而從未發生嚴重霜凍。

以上兩個例句中的 *so that* 是表示“結果”的；但它又有表示“目的”的用法，兩者很難辨別。表示“結果”的 *so that* 之前普通一概加逗點 (,)，但也不一定是這樣。表示“目的”時，普通是跟 *may* 這個詞連用的，但表示“結果”也有附 *may* 的，所以讀者必須理解上下文關係，以免誤解。

[結果]

The train was late, *so that* I could not keep my word.

火車遲到，因而我不能踐約。

[目的]

Come early *so that* I *may* catch the train.

請早點來，以便我可以趕上火車。

如上面所說，*may* 是表示“目的”的；但在下面的句子中它是表示“結果”的：

It has cleared up beautifully, *so that* he *may* (= *can*) come after all.

天晴朗了，因而他終究可以來了。

11. that; so...that

(a) Have you lost your money, *that* you look so sad?

你面露愁容，難道丟了錢嗎？

(b) He worked *so* hard *that* he broke down.

他因過於勞累而搞垮了身體。

(a) Everything seemed to him to be shaping satisfactorily *that* his spirits were at their highest.

他似乎覺得萬事如意，所以他高興得不得了。

(b) In New Zealand the climate is *so* mild *that* the grass keeps green all the year round.

新西蘭的氣候非常暖和，所以四季常青。

用 *so...that* 時常與副詞或形容詞連用，如上例(b)。

(1) *So...that* 表示實際的結果用陳述語氣：

He is speaking *so* loud *that* I hear him even from here.

他講話聲音是那麼洪亮，以致連這兒也可聽到。

(2) 表示可能的結果用 *may*：

He is *so* badly injured *that* he *may* die.

他受傷那麼重，也許會死。

(3) 表示不可避免的結果用 *must*：

He is *so* badly injured *that* he *must* die.

他受傷那麼重，一定要死。

so + adjective (adverb) + *that*... 的形式，是既表示“結果”，又表示“程度”的。表示“結果”的從句（即 *that*-clause）的第一個詞 *that* 往往省略，尤其是在口語裏。例如：

(a) Beatrice is *so* strong and healthy, [that] she never takes any medicine.

比亞特麗斯非常強健，從不吃什麼藥。

(b) You go *so* fast, [that] I cannot keep pace with you.

你走得這樣快，我趕不上。

12. *so...as to*; *such...as to*

(a) It was *so* cold *as to* freeze the river.

天氣極冷，以致河水結冰了。

(b) The winter was *so* far advanced *as* in great measure *to* spoil the beauty of the prospect.

嚴冬已到，(結果) 大大地減損了景色之美。

前項所述的是表“結果”的從句，而本項所述的 *so...as to* 則為表“結果”的短語，也是表示“程度”和“結果”的。又有不用 *so* (beautiful, etc.) *that* 而用 *such as to* 這個短語的。例如：

Our first view of Rio de Janeiro was *such as to* stamp it forever on the memories of all of us. (= Our first view... was *such* (= *so* beautiful 或 impressive) *that* it stamped itself forever on the...)

我們第一次看到里約熱內盧，就覺得很美，以致那印象永遠留在我們每個人的記憶裏。

13. *whence* (=for which reason)

It feeds on small birds, *whence* it is called the butcher bird.

它吃小鳥，所以叫做屠夫鳥。(學名叫百勞)

Hence (因這緣故) 和 *thence* (因那緣故) 都放在並列結構之首；而 *whence* 則作為關係連詞，放在從句之首。

He was merciless toward opponents, *whence* he was called the Tiger.

他對敵人是無情的，所以有“老虎”的稱號。

14. *wherefore* (=for which reason)

He was angry, *wherefore* I was afraid.

他大發脾氣，因而我覺得害怕。

Therefore-clause 放在並列結構之首，而 *wherefore*-clause 則放在從句之首；就是 *wherefore* 這一個詞含有 *for which reason* 的意思。

I sent the letter by air mail *wherefore* he received it early.

我用航郵發出那信，因而他及早收到了。

15. 不定式

(a) Mr. Chi Pei Shih, the great artist of China, lived *to be* 97.

中國的大畫家齊白石先生活到九十七歲。

(b) A butterfly had alighted *to die*.

一隻蝴蝶墮地而死。

(c) They returned home *to find him gone*. = They returned home and found him gone.

他們回家一看，他已走了。

像(a)句是表示“自然的結果”，不定式的意義一看就可明白；而像(b)句則可從上下文的關係來判斷它是否表示“結果”；在(c)句中不定式表示“結果”，它的構成要素也略有一定。又如：

(a) One day Mr. Nelson disappeared from town, never *to be seen* again.

納爾遜先生在城裏不露面了，從此再也沒有人見到他了。

(b) The boys grew up *to be* young men.

孩子們長大成爲青年。

(1)不定式用表示“發現”的動詞（如 find, see 等）：

He awoke *to find* the sun streaming into his room.

他醒來一看，太陽已射進他的室內。

(2)冠以 never 的不定式：

In 1903 he went to America *never to return*.

他於1903年赴美洲，從此一去不返。

(3)加強語氣的不定式（在不定式前加 only 或 but）：

(a)He opened the door of the dining room, *only to find* (= and found) it absolutely empty.

他打開食堂的門，只見裏面什麼也沒有。

(b)He went home *only to die*.

他返鄉而死。

16. 介詞短語

(a)He sobbed himself *to sleep*.

他嗚咽得睡着了。

(b)He worked himself *to death*.

他因過勞而死。

The fire which broke out last night destroyed two houses and three people were burned *to death*.

昨晚發生的火災焚毀了兩所房屋，燒死了三個人。

類似插入語的介詞短語表示“結果”：

(a)At last, in the far distance, *to his great joy*, he spied a light.

最後在遠方發見了燈火，這使他覺得非常高興。

(b)*To my deep regret*, I cannot accept your invitation.

我不能接受你的邀請，非常抱歉。

IV. 讓步(Concession)

He is poor, *but* he is happy. 像這類句子，poor 和 happy 這兩個觀念，用並列連詞 *but* 連接起來，給它們以同等的重要性，成爲由兩個並列的句子構成的並列句。但若着重兩個觀念中的任何一個，而將另一個觀念從屬於它，比方着重於 happy，則上面的句子當改成 *Though* he is poor, he is happy. 由 *though* 這個從屬連詞所引導的從句，是屬於 he is happy 這一主句的。這種含有“讓步”觀念的 *though*-clause 叫做讓步從句。

這種表示“讓步”的狀語從句，雖然是表示跟主句對立或相反的觀念，但仍不致破壞它的觀念的確實性；倒是因爲相反的觀念，使主句的語意更加明顯。

1. *though, although* (=despite the fact that)

(a) *Though* it is cheap, I do not want it.

它雖便宜，我却不要。

(b) *Although* you are rich, you are not happy.

你雖有錢，但是並不快樂。

Though-clause 已很足以表示“讓步”的觀念了，如果把 *yet, still, nevertheless* 等詞插在主句中，那麼它的語氣就更強。

(a) *Though* the night was dark and dismal, *yet* the form of the unknown might now in some degree be ascertained.

雖然夜是黑暗陰森，但是那個不明之物的模樣現在却有幾分可以認得出來。

(b) *Although* it may seem incredible, it is *nevertheless* true.

這事看來雖不可信，但却是事實。

也有把 *though* 這個詞放在句尾的，尤其是在口語裏。

The medicine is good for you; it is a little bitter, *though*.
這藥對你有效，雖然它稍微帶些苦味。

2. *though* (although)和虛擬語氣連用

(a) Subjunctive Present:

Though everyone desert you, I will not [desert you].
即使所有的人都背棄你，我也決不會這樣做。

(b) Subjunctive Past:

Though he were to beg this on his knees, I should still refuse.
縱使他跪着求我，我也仍舊不答應。

(c) Subjunctive Future:

Though everyone should desert you, I will not.
萬一所有的人都背棄你，我也決不會這樣做。

不把讓步作為事實，却當作假說來表示時，就用虛擬語氣。其用法，一般地說，虛擬程度較淺的用虛擬語氣現在時(subjunctive present); 完全虛妄的用虛擬語氣過去時(subjunctive past); 虛實不定的用虛擬語氣將來時(subjunctive future)。

(a) Every gift, *though it be* small, is in reality great if given with affection.

不論什麼禮物，倘若是出於愛而贈送的，即使菲薄，實際上也是厚禮。

(b) *Though he blame* me, yet will I trust in him.

即使他責備我，我還是願相信他。

如要加強 *though*-clause 的語氣，那就不用 *even though*。

I will fight against evil, *even though* it cost me so high.

我要和邪惡鬥爭，即使付出高昂代價。

3. though, although 從句中主語和動詞的省略

Though [they are] a comparatively small range, the Alps of South-west Europe are yet the most famous mountains in the world.

歐洲西南部的阿爾卑斯山雖是比較小的山脈，但仍不失為世界最著名的山嶽。

Though 與 although 所引導的狀語從句常用省略形式，即將主語和動詞省略。這種句法，以主句的主語和從句的主語同屬一人、一事、一物者為限。

(a) *Though [she was] young, she was experienced.*

她雖年輕，却富有經驗。

(b) *Though [he is] no fighter, he is not a coward.*

他雖然不是戰士，却決非懦夫。

被省略的 though-clause 也有插在句子中名詞的後面，來限制那名詞的。例如：

My houses, though [they are] large, are of stone and wood like those of others.

我的房子雖大，但和別家一樣是用石頭和木材建造的。

4. though, although 的倒置

Though 或 although 所引導的讓步從句的謂語中的名詞或形容詞——有時為賓語——有放在句首的。這種倒置是為加強語勢。

(a) *Early in the evening though it was, the clouds made it almost dark in the forest. (= Though it was early in the*

evening, the...)

雖然還剛到傍晚，雲翳却使森林幾乎黑了。

(b) *Commonplace though it may appear, this doing of one's duty embodies the highest ideal of life and character. (= Though it may appear commonplace, this...)*

這種忠於職守的事跡，雖然看起來也許平淡無奇，實在却是人生和性格的最高理想的具體表現。

這種句法使 *though*-clause 產生一種文體效果，使它具有誇張的色彩。

She has more sense than Mary, child though she is. (= ..., though she is a child.)

她雖是個孩子，却比瑪麗更有見識。

上面是名詞的例子。在這種情況下，不定冠詞 *a, an* 是不用的。又，這種讓步從句因為語調的關係，概用 *though*，不用 *although*。

5. *as* (= *though*); *that*

As 代替 *though* 時，它的句式如下，請注意詞序。

[名詞]

(a) *Child as he was, he was desperate with anger. (= Though he was a child,...)*

他雖然是個孩子，却因氣憤而不顧一切了。

[形容詞]

(b) *Weak as I am, I will make the effort. (= Though I am weak,...)*

我雖體弱，却要努力以赴。

[副詞]

(c) *Rashly as he acted, he had some excuse. (= though he*

acted rashly,...)

他雖行動魯莽，但也不是沒有理由的。

用 *as* 構成的讓步從句，意義和前項所述的 *though* 相同，它是和形容詞或副詞或名詞連用。*Though* 這個詞否定的色調較濃，而 *as* 則略帶肯定的色彩。所以 *as* 跟 *however* 的意思非常近似。又，在 *as* 從句中，名詞前面也概不用冠詞。

(a) *But stupid as (= though) I am, I can beat you in a race.*

但我雖然笨拙，在賽跑方面我却能勝過你。

(b) *Hard as Rolf worked, he did not toil like Oddo.*

洛爾夫雖然努力工作，但不像奧多辛勤。

(c) *Lover of towns as I am, I realize that I owe a debt to my early country life.*

雖然我愛好都市生活，却感到我受惠於少年時代的鄉村生活。和 *as* 同一性質的是 *that*，它也有構成讓步從句的用法。

Strong man that (= as) he is, John has been severely put to the test during the past few weeks.

約翰儘管是一個堅強的人，在過去的幾星期內他受到嚴重考驗。這種句法也可以用來表示“理由”。例如：

Sanza, brave soldier that he was, scorned to strike a fallen foe, and bade him rise and fight again.

桑查是個勇敢的武士，所以不屑攻擊已倒地的敵人，叫他站起來再鬥。

6. *if; even if (= though)*

表示“條件”的 *if*-clause 常用來表示“讓步”。如果在 *if* 之前加上一個 *even* 則語氣更強。

(a) *I couldn't be angry with him if I tried.*

我即使想對他發怒，也不能發怒。

(b) *Even if you fail, you will have gained experience.*

你即使失敗，也可得些經驗。

表示“讓步”的 if 是從表示“條件”的 if 演變而來的，而且事實上這個 if-clause 雖然是表示“讓步”，同時却也表示一種“條件”；所以僅僅看了 if-clause，是不能斷定它究竟具有何種性質的。要決定這一點，還得看主句的陳述如何。

〔讓步〕

If I die, mourn not over my fate.

即使我死了，也不要為我的命運哀傷。

〔條件〕

If I die, mourn over my fate.

我倘若死了，你可以為我的命運哀嘆。

比上述的 if-clause 語氣更強的，是以 even if 開始的從句。它的意義正和 even though 相同；形式和用法則跟上述的 if-clause 一樣。

(a) *That typewriter is the best, even if it is old.*

那打字機雖然舊了，却是最好的。

(b) *Even if it were more difficult, I should try to accomplish it.*

即使困難更大，我也要把它完成。

If, even if 常有像上例 (b) 那樣跟虛擬語氣連用，是作為不確定的假說事實來處理的。它和作為確定事實來處理的直陳語氣 (even if it is more difficult) 稍有不同。

插入式 if-clause (主語和動詞省略)：

If-clause 有將主語和動詞省去，採取插句的形式。例如：

(a) *If [it was] a tributary, the stream was a large one.*

雖說是支流，這河却是條大河。

(b) I have been ill, and *if not* (=if I have not been) *quite unable to write*, I have been unfit to do it.

我有病，即使不是完全不能寫作，我也不適宜於從事這個工作了。

If 或 even if 的省略形式（動詞先行）：

表示“讓步”的 if-clause 和 even if-clause 正和條件從句的情形一樣，有的把 if 或 even if 省略，而使動詞先行，即置動詞於句首。這種句法，極易跟條件從句混淆，應該特別注意。

(a) *Were the danger even greater*, I should feel compelled to go.
(= Even if the danger were greater, I...)

即使危險再大些，我也覺得非去不可。

(b) *Even had she been alive*, we should not have seen her. (= Even if she had been alive, we...)

即使她還活着，我們也不會遇到她了。

(c) *Were we* (= Even if we were) *eloquent as orators*, yet we should please some people more by listening than by talking.

即使我們有雄辯家一樣的辯才，也還是多聽少講更討人歡喜。

(d) *Had Johnson* (= Even if Johnson had) *left* nothing but his Dictionary, one might have traced there a great intellect, a genuine man.

即使約翰遜除辭典外沒有什麼著作傳諸後世，人們也可從字裏行間領略他那偉大的智慧和純正的人格。

7. granted that

Granted that he had the best intentions, his conduct was productive of great mischief. (= Even if we grant that he had...)

即使他懷着最好的意圖，他的行為却甚為有害。

把某事實作為讓步的假定前提，從而提出議論，這樣的語句常用過去分詞或現在分詞構成；用語則以 *granted*, *granting*, *conceding*, *assuming*, *admitting* 等為限。但在表示“條件”的句子中也有這種句式，所以要特別注意。

(a) *Even granting* the best intentions on his part, his conduct was productive of mischief.

即使他的意願良好，他的行為却甚為有害。

(b) *Conceding* his superiority as a scholar, it is evident that he is inferior as a man.

即使認為他是卓越的學者，但在做人方面，他顯然是卑劣的。

(c) *Even assuming* a great willingness on the part of the members to work, few are properly prepared for the task.

即使會員們都有極願服務的心，而足於應付那項工作的人却幾乎沒有。

(d) *Admitting* what you say, I still think that you made a mistake.

即使你所說的確是事實，我還是覺得你錯了。

8. may ..., but [and yet]

(a) English *may* be difficult to learn, *but* I like it very much.

英語也許不容易學，但我很喜歡它。

(b) We *may* study for ever, *and* we are never as learned as we would.

我們雖一直用功，但絕不能達到像我們所願望的那樣博學。

採取並列句（用 *and*, *but* 等連詞）的形式，而在後面的從句中加一 *yet*，則語意就更清楚。

(a) A man *may* be proficient in theory, *and yet* he may fail as a

practitioner.

有人也許擅長理論，但作為一個實踐者或許要失敗。

(b) *It seems proved, but yet I doubt it.*

這事好像證實了，但我還懷疑。

9. indeed..., but [and yet]

Indeed he is young, but he is careful.

他固然年輕，但極審慎。

Indeed 也有用 *it is true, to be sure* 等語句來代替的。

(a) "I have relations", said he, "in Valencia, poor *indeed, but* worthy and affectionate."

“我在瓦棱薩有些親戚，”他說，“那些親戚固然貧窮，但是品質高貴而富於感情。”

(b) *They are little things, it is true; but human life is made of comparative trifles.*

這些原是瑣事，但生活就是由比較瑣碎的事件構成的。

10. for all (that) (= though)

(a) *She was strong, for all (= though) she was so small.*

她雖瘦小，却極強壯。

(b) *For all that (= Though) it was a cold night, the sweat was pouring down my face.*

雖是寒冷的晚上，但汗水在我的臉上直流而下。

For all (that) 之後跟從句；但也有跟短語的。跟短語時當然沒有 *that* 這一個詞了。

The little man did not shout nor sing for all his infinite glad-

ness.

那少年雖然感到無限的喜悅，却不大叫，也不歌唱。

for all that 又有獨立使用的。例如：

(a) *For all that*, the letter caused her to feel exceedingly uneasy.
儘管如此，這封信却使她感到極度不安。

(b) I shouldn't believe it myself if anybody told it to me, but it's a fact, *for all that*.

假若有人把這件事告訴我，我是不會相信的，但它終究是事實。

跟 for all... 這個短語在形式上和意義上相似的，是 will all one's ... (learning, faults, etc.)。

With (= In spite of) *all my faults* I am glad that there is nothing mean or little about me!

雖然我有這些缺點，但我却因自己毫不自私或小器而高興。

11. however + 形容詞或副詞

(a) *However underhand the villains may be*, they will fail at last.

惡人不論怎樣陰險，終究必歸失敗。

(b) *However difficult the job may be*, I'll fulfil it in time.

無論這項工作怎樣難，我也要如期完成它。

However + adjective (adverb) + may 是比較委婉地表示“讓步”的通用形式。

(a) *However hard he may try*, he will not attain his object.

不論他怎樣努力，也不會達到他的目的。

(b) Choose always the way that seems best, *however rough it may be*, and flexibility of your own will soon render it easy

and agreeable.

應常選擇最好的方式，不管它怎樣艱難，你的靈活性很快就會使之如意適應。

(c) His pleasure, *however implicit it may be*, is expressed in his eyes.

他的喜悅無論怎麼含蓄，也從他的眼睛上流露出來。

這種形式的讓步從句，也有將 *may be* 省略的，例如：

However imperfect our machines [may be], they can help us amazingly.

我們的機器即使怎樣不完善，也對我們很有用處。

倘若不用 *however* 而用 *how (much) soever*，則“讓步”的語氣更強。例如：

How much soever you may study science, when you do not act wisely you are ignorant.

無論你學問研究得怎樣好，如果行動不明智，那就跟不學無術一樣。

12. 以 *-ever, -soever* 等詞引導

-ever (關係代詞 *whatever, whoever, whichever*.)

However 以形容詞或副詞為主體，而現在所說的 *whoever, whatever, whichever* 等則以名詞或代詞為主體，意義跟 *no matter who (what)* 相同。

(a) He's a scoundrel, *whoever he may be*.

不管他是何人，總是一個壞蛋。

(b) Drinking isn't fine or manly, *whatever some of you may think of it*.

飲酒總不是好事，不管你們之中有人怎樣想。

(c) I will do *whichever you say*.

不管你怎麼說，我一定要做。

又有在 *whatever-*, *whoever-* clause 中不用 *may* 而用虛擬語氣或直陳語氣來表示“讓步”的：

(a) *Whatever be the reason*, I shall be truly grateful.

不論什麼理由，我將真誠地感激。

(b) *Whatever you do*, don't do that.

不管做什麼事也罷，只是不要做那樣的事。

Whatever- clause 的動詞有時完全省略，例如：

(a) Myra was always out of doors before six in the morning,
whatever the weather [might be].

麥拉常在早上六點前走出戶外去，不管天氣怎樣。

(b) *Whatever his age* [might be], John never seemed to grow up.

不管約翰的歲數，他看來老是長不大。

13. no matter how [what, who, etc.]

比前兩項所述的 *however-* clause 和 *whatever-* clause 所表示的讓步語氣更強的，是以 *no matter* 開始的從句。*No matter* 是 *it is of no importance, it does not matter*（沒有關係）的意思，它所引導的從句是用 *how, what, who, when, where* 等詞和從句連結起來的。

No matter how hard the bread was, Tom ate it gluttonously since he did not take any food for three days.

不管麵包怎麼硬，湯姆還是狼吞虎嚥，因他已三天沒有吃東西了。

(a) *No matter what* he says, don't go.

不管他怎麼講，不要去。

(b) This is not true, *no matter who* says so.

不管誰說，這不是真的。

14. 由代詞的倒置構成

I shall have to buy the coat, *cost what it may*. (= I shall have to buy the coat, no matter what [= whatever] it may cost.)

不管要花多少錢，我非買這件上衣不可。

祈使句取“動詞 + 連詞”(what, where, when, how, who, which 等)的詞序而從屬於主句時，含有“讓步”的意思。

(a) *Call when you will*, you will find her in the kitchen. (= No matter when [= whenever] you may call, you will ...)

不論什麼時候去訪，她總是在廚房裏。

(b) *Go where you will*, the sea is never more than 80 miles away. (= No matter where [= wherever] you may go, the sea ...)

不論向哪方走，你總在離海八十英里之內的地方。

(c) *Doubt whom you will*, but never yourself. (= No matter whom [= whomever] you may doubt, never doubt yourself.)

不管你對誰懷疑，但決不能懷疑你自己。

(d) *Be the consequences what they may*, however, I will not shrink from doing my duty.

但是不論結果怎樣，我也不願對履行義務有所規避。

用 *let* 的讓步從句，是爲了加強語氣而用的祈使形式之一：

His morals cannot be attended to too early, *let his station be*

what it may. (= His morals ..., be his station what it may.)

不管他地位如何，關於品德非趕快注意不可。

15. 祈使語氣 + as one may [will]

Do as we may, we shall succeed. (= Do what we will ...;

No matter what we may do ...)

不管我們做什麼，都將成功。

跟前項的讓步從句非常相像的，是以 as 為要素的祈使的讓步句式。

(a) *Detest him as they may,* they must acknowledge his greatness.

(= Though they detest him as they may, they ...; No matter how [= However] they may detest him, they ...)

無論他們怎樣厭惡他，也不能不承認他的偉大。

(b) Finally the inevitable happened; I lost Gabriele. *Search as I would,* I could find no sign of him.

不可避免的事終於發生了，我失去了格勃利。不管我怎樣尋找，也不能發現他的踪跡。

16. 略去 though [although]

這種讓步從句是用祈使語氣來表示選擇上的不介意的，採取“be + 主語”的顛倒形式。

We cannot receive him, *be he* (= though he be) *who he may.*

不管他是誰，我們無法接待他。

這種句式跟 whether ... or [or not] 相似。

(a) *Be it* (= though it be) *ever so humble,* there's no place like

home.

不論怎樣簡陋，也沒有像家裏那樣舒適的地方。

(b) *Believe me or not*, something is in my pocket.

不管你信不信，我的袋裏是藏着一些東西的。

17. 省略形式

讓步從句有被縮短，即將其中的主語和動詞略去的。

Waking or sleeping, this subject is always in my mind. (= Whether I be waking or sleeping, ...)

不論醒着或睡着，這問題始終縈繞在我的腦中。

Dead or alive, nobody minded Ben Gun.

不論死活，誰都不關心本·根。

18. while; whilst

While [whilst] 是表示明顯的對照的連詞，與 *though* 和 *although* 同義。

While (= *Though*) you are not the only person to blame, you are principally responsible for it.

你雖不是唯一承擔過失的人，却是負主要責任的人。

Whilst 和 *while* 同義，不過現在 *while* 比較常用。*while*-clause 的主語如果和主句的主語相同，常將主語和動詞略去。例如：

Certain British personalities, *while* [they are] opposing U.S. government loans, are inclined to welcome investments of private American capital, considering them to be a source of the much-needed dollars.

某些英國人士雖然反對美國政府的貸款，却有歡迎美國私人投

資的意思，因為他們認為這種私人投資是他們迫切需要的美元的一種來源。

19. in spite of (the fact that)

(a) The secret of remaining young *in spite of* old age and white hairs is to preserve our enthusiasm.

儘管年老髮白，依然保持着青春的秘訣，就是保持我們的热情。

(b) Ethel indignantly denied this, *in spite of the fact that* she had not the faintest recollection of the incident.

埃塞爾雖然已把那事件完全忘却了，却忿然地對此事加以否定。

(c) I laughed *in spite of* myself.

我不禁笑了起來。

20. despite; regardless of

(a) *Despite* their promises we doubt them.

儘管他們作了保證，我們還是不信。

(b) I was trying to secure it *regardless of* expense.

我不顧費用如何而想得到它。

(a) We persevered *despite* great difficulties.

儘管困難很大，我們堅持下來了。

(b) The task must be accomplished *regardless of* cost.

不管要付出多少代價，這個任務必須完成。

21. notwithstanding (= in spite of)

(a) *Notwithstanding* the lateness of the hour, we started on our journey.

雖然時間已晚，我們却出發去旅行。

(b) *Notwithstanding that* it was raining hard, we started.

雖然在下大雨，我們却出發了。

Notwithstanding all his efforts, he fail to gain his end.

不管他怎麼努力，他仍然不能達到目的。

He is kind *notwithstanding* he is stern.

他雖然嚴厲，但還是仁慈的。

22. when (= though)

You are reading a book *when* you should have been preparing to start.

雖然你應該準備出發了，但你却還在看書。

連詞 *when* 的意義和 *while*, *whereas* 相似，有時也用來表示“讓步”。

They sometimes expect gratitude *when* (= although) they are not entitled to it.

他們有時希望得到人家的感謝，儘管他們不配。

23. whereas (= though)

I hate him, *whereas* (= although) you merely dislike him.

你只不過討厭他而我却恨他。

這個連詞大體上和 *while* 同義，但它是純粹的文言，對比的語氣比 *while* 更強。

(a) He claimed success, *whereas* in reality he failed.

他自吹說成功了，實際上他失敗了。

(b) Britain is not mountainous, *whereas* Italy is mainly mountainous.

英國少山，而意大利則大部是山地。

(c) Changes in geographical environment of any importance require millions of years, *whereas* a few hundred or a couple of thousand years are enough for even very important changes in the system of human society.

地理環境方面任何稍微重大的變化都需要幾百萬年，而人類社會制度中甚至最重大的變更，也只要幾百年或一二千年就夠了。

24. 不定式

You couldn't do that *to save your life* (= even if you were to save your life).

就是爲了保全你的性命（即使爲了保全你的性命），你也不能做那種事。

To do my best, I could not overtake him.

不管我怎樣盡力，我還是不能追上他。

25. 分詞

Disappointed, but not *discouraged*, Miranda followed again.

米蘭達雖已失望，但並不沮喪，重新在後面追趕。

分詞可以不用連詞，單獨構成表示“讓步”的短語。它和表示“理由”的分詞結構極易混淆，應該特別注意。

(a) *Freed from prison*, Hester did not flee, but established herself in a small cottage just outside the town. (= Though she was freed from prison,...)

雖然出獄了，但海斯特並不逃離，却定居於城郊一所小屋裏。

(b) There are some people who, *not lacking in skill on ordinary occasions*, lose their presence of mind in public, and cannot do themselves justice.

有些人在平時雖很能幹，但到了大庭廣衆之前，却慌張而不能充分發揮其才能了。

V. 目的(Purpose)

“目的”是表示主要動詞所表示的活動目的或有計劃和意想中的結果。

表示“目的”的主要句法，大體有下列七種：

[短語]

We eat *to live*.

We eat *in order to live*.

We eat *for the purpose of living*.

[從句]

We eat *in order that we may live*.

We eat *so that we may live*.

We eat *that we may live*.

We eat *lest we die*.

這裏應該注意的是這些表示“目的”的語句都可還原為不定式 to 這個最簡單的形式。即 *in order to*, *in order that we may*, *so that we may*, *that we may* 都可改成不定式 *to (live)*; *lest* 可以改

成 not to。

1. 不定式

He will work selflessly *to make the people happy*.
他願爲了使人民幸福而忘我地工作。

如要加強“目的”的語氣，可以倒置不定式短語的位置，例如：

(a) *To succeed*, you must work.

要成功必須努力。

(b) *To pacify her*, I held the window ajar a few seconds.

爲了使她平靜下來，我把窗微微地推開了幾秒鐘。

2. in order to

(a) Science must investigate the world, *in order to* control it.

爲了要控制地球，科學非研究地球不可。

(b) *In order to* exist, the Greeks were obliged to cultivate every inch of soil.

爲了生存，希臘人不得不在每一寸土地上都加以耕作。

(a) Sometimes you retreat *in order to* advance.

有時候你是以退爲進。

(b) I winked upon my daughters, *in order to* prevent their compliance.

我向我的女兒們使了個眼色，以阻止她們遷就。

(c) We took off our shoes upon entering, *in order not to* soil the soft white mats.

爲了避免把柔軟的白墊子弄髒，我們進門時把鞋脫下。

(d) I am going early *in order to* get a good seat.

我想提早去好找個好位子。

3. on purpose to (不定式)

I went to Germany *on purpose to* study this question.

我爲了研究這個問題，特地到德國去。

On purpose 原是“特地”，“故意”的意思，加強它後面表示目的的語句的語氣。

He acted in that way *on purpose to* deceive his opponent.

他爲了欺騙對手，故意那樣做。

4. that...may (= in order that, so that)

You must proceed in such a manner *that it shall* not offend the public.

你必須這樣進行，以免觸犯衆怒。

That 和 *so that* 不僅可以表示“目的”，也可用來表示“結果”。其區別可從語氣上看出來，就是表示“結果”的從句用直陳語氣來敘述實際的結果；而表示“目的”的從句則一概用 *may*, *might* 這種可能語氣，或像上例那樣用 *shall*, *should* 等，以表示所企圖的或所希望的結果——即“目的”。

That...may 的 *that* 的意義跟 *so that* 完全相同，但前者氣勢較弱，不像 *so that* 那樣常用。

Da Vinci would walk the whole length of Milan *that he might* alter a single tint in his picture of the *Last Supper*.

達芬奇爲了在他《最後的晚餐》一畫中作些細微的色彩改變，常常走遍米蘭全市。

5. in order that (= so that)

(a) He raised his hand *in order that* the bus *might* stop.

他舉手攔公共汽車停車。

(b) *In order that* industry and agriculture *may* develop, transport and commerce must grow in proportion.

爲了發展工業和農業，必須相應地發展運輸業和商業。

In order that 表示“目的”，較 *that* 和 *so that* 更爲明確。*in order to* 係與不定式短語連用；*in order that* 則與從句連用。

The greatest good [that] a man can do is to cultivate himself, develop his powers, *in order that* he *may* be of greater service to humanity.

人所能做到的最大的好事，是爲了能更好地爲人類服務而培養自己和發展自己的能力。

In order that 語句中的 *may*，也有改用 *should* 或 *shall* 來表示說話者的意志和輕微的命令的：

And I have come all the way from Vienna *in order that* you *should* thoroughly understand me.

爲了使你徹底了解我，我老遠地從維也納跑來。

6. so that (= in order that)

(a) Tell me quickly, *so that* I, too, *may* know why.

請你快點告訴我，使我也可曉得到底是什麼理由。

(b) They hurried *so that* they *might* not miss the train.

他們爲了不致趕不上火車，急忙忙地走着。

So that 語句中所含的情態動詞通常是 *may*, *might*，但也用 *can*，

will 等。倘若用 will, 則 may 這個詞所含有的“可能”的意味, 自然就沒有了。

(a) He advised me to go to bed early *so that* I *could* rise in time next morning.

他勸我早點去睡, 以便第二天早上能夠準時起床。

(b) They hurried *so that* they *wouldn't* miss the train.

他們爲了不致趕不上火車, 急忙忙地走着。

在口語中, *so that* 的 *that* 是省略的:

They hurried *so* they *wouldn't* miss the train.

So that 的 *so* 常跟 *that* 分離, 而跟主要動詞相結合, 更明確地表示 “in such a way that” 的意思:

Let us endeavor (= try) *so* to live *that* when we come to die even the undertaker will be sorry. (= Let us endeavor to live in such a way that...)

讓我們活着時努力而爲, 以致到我們去世時連葬儀承辦者也感到悲傷。

7. *lest* (= that...not, for fear)

(a) Take care *lest* you fall.

當心摔跤。

(b) Grown people should never say or do anything wrong before children, *lest* they *should* set them a bad example.

(=...that they may not set them a bad example.)

大人切勿在孩子面前說不正當的話或做不正當的事, 以免給予他們不良的榜樣。

Lest 是 *so that...not, in order that ... not* 的意思, 跟前面所說的幾個連詞是稍異其趣的。

(a) She turned her head away *lest* he *should* see her tears.

她轉過頭去，免得他看見她掉眼淚。

(b) Climb we not too high, *lest* we *should* fall too low.

我們不要爬得太高，以免跌得太低。

Lest 所引導的從句，今日雖常與 *should*, *might* 等助動詞連用，但原來是不用這些詞的。現在美國英語裏也常用原形動詞。例如：

(a) He makes a note of the assignment *lest* he *forget* it.

他把要完成的任務記了下來，免得遺忘。

(b) Give him food *lest* he *perish*.

請給他食物，免得他餓死。

(c) I will not make a noise *lest* I *wake* him.

我不願吵鬧，免得驚醒他。

8. so as to

(a) Soames put on his coat *so as not to* be cold.

索姆斯怕受涼，穿上了大衣。

(b) He listens attentively *so as not to* miss a single word.

他爲了不漏掉一個詞，聚精會神地傾聽着。

表示“目的”的 *so as to* 有取“*so + verb + as to*”的形式，即將動詞放在 *so* 與 *as to* 的中間。例如：

A man must *so* train his habits *as to* rely upon his own courage in moments of emergency.

一個人必須養成這樣的習慣，以便在危急關頭依靠自己的勇氣。

倘使 *so* 與 *as to* 的中間是副詞或形容詞，即“*so + 副詞*”或“*形容詞 + as to*”的詞序，通常是表示“結果”的。這一點須注意。

[目的]

I got up early *so as to* be in time for the first train.

我爲要趕上第一班火車，起得很早。

[結果]

I got up *so early as to* be in time for the first train.

我起得很早，所以趕上了第一班火車。

9. 介詞短語

I am not here to-night *for the purpose of* making a speech.

今晚我並非爲了講演才到這兒來的。

以“介詞短語+ing”的形式來表示“目的”，是非常普通的。表示“目的”的主要介詞短語有 *with the object of*; *with the intention of*; *for the purpose of*; *with a view to*; *to the end that (+ may)* 等。

(a) I said all I could *with a view to* proving his innocence.

我已盡我所知說了出來，俾使證明他無罪。

(b) I didn't come *with the intention of* destroying the good feeling prevailing among you.

我之到來不是爲了破壞你們之間的友好感情的。

(c) He went there *with the object of* seeking a reconciliation.

他抱着和解的目的到那裏去。

(d) The steamboat was fully furnished with life-preservers, *to the end that* (= so that) the passengers *might* be saved in case of accident.

爲了使乘客在發生意外事故時得救，汽船上備有充足的救生用具。

10. and (=in order to)

這種形式的句子大都用於口語。

(a) Try *and* do it.

試試看吧。

(b) I will go *and* see.

我要去看看。

(a) Tom, curious, little rogue that he was, must needs go *and* see what it was.

湯姆是個好奇的乖孩子，所以他非去看個明白不可。

(b) The little child came *and* looked at Pena solemnly.

小孩子跑了過來，一本正經地瞧着佩納。

VI. 行爲方式(Manner)

所謂“行爲方式”是指主句等的主要動詞所表示的活動的方式。它的形式，大體有三種：(1)用as,(2)用 so that,(3)用 as if,都起連詞作用。

1. as

(a) Do *as* I tell you.

照我告訴你的那樣做。

(b) *Just as* most of us eat too much*, so most of us sleep too much.

正像許多人太貪吃一樣，有許多人太貪睡。

在表示“行爲方式”的從句中最常用的連詞是 as。它的形式極多，這裏所揭示的是 as-clause 的原形。

* 爲了加 just 等副詞於 as 之前以加強語氣，常將 as-clause 放在句首。

(a) In Rome do *as* the Romans do.

在羅馬須像羅馬人那樣行事（入鄉隨俗）。

(b) I don't feel at all *as* Tom does on that subject.

對於這個問題，我的看法跟湯姆完全不一樣。

(c) *As* the soil, however rich it may be, cannot be productive without culture, *so* the mind, without cultivation, can never produce good fruit.

好像無論怎樣肥沃的土地如果不耕種就不會有農產品一樣，思想如果無修養，也決不會有良好的結果。

2. 謂語省略的 *as*-clause

He behaved *as* a child [does]

他的舉止好像孩子。

(a) I like him as well *as* he [likes me].

我喜歡他，正如他喜歡我一樣。

(b) I have understanding as well *as* you [have understanding].

我的理解力和你的一樣好。

因為 *as*-clause 的謂語常常省略，所以連詞 *as* 跟介詞 *like* 往往容易混同。比較：

(a) He behaved *as* a child [does].

他作孩子般的舉動。

(b) They behaved *like* children.

他們作孩子般的舉動。

3. 主語省略的 *as*-clause

He wrote *as* [it] follows:

他寫成如下：

As-clause 的主語不論是否跟主句的主語相同，都可以省略。

(a) The man opposed me, *as* [it] was anticipated.

那人反對我，正如所預料。

(b) Upon reaching the hut I rapped *as* [it] was my custom.

我到了那小屋，就照例敲起門來。

4. 主語和動詞省略的 as-clause

(a) He wrote *as* usual. (= ... *as* it was usual.)

他照常寫作。

(b) Economize time in reading *as* [you economize] in everything else.

和做一切別的事情一樣，讀書須節省時間。

As-clause 有時把主語和動詞一起省略。這時常取 *as usual*, *as now*, *as always*, *as ever*, *as before*, *as elsewhere* 等形式。

(a) In those days, *as* [they are] *now*, most of these people were tall and very powerful.

當時和現在一樣，這些人大多數是高個子，而且力氣很大。

(b) You had better manage the business *as before*.

你還是照老樣經營好。

5. as 引導插句

New Zealand, *as you know*, has a small population.

像你們所知道的，新西蘭人口很少。

這個 *as* 最普通的用法是表示敘述的方式，它常放在主語和謂語之間，但也有放在句首或句尾的。

(a) This trifling incident, *as* we shall see later, saved the lives

of many brave men.

像下文我們要講的那樣，這樁小事情救了許多勇士的性命。

(b) His health has, *as it seems*, greatly improved of late.

看上去他身體近來好多了。

6. as if; as though

(a) He behaved *as if* he were insane.

他的舉動彷彿狂人一般。

(b) He acts *as though* he were insane.

他的舉動如同狂人。

用 *as if*, *as though* 構成的句子，本來是虛擬語氣，它的動詞的時態可以是虛擬語氣過去時，也可以是虛擬語氣過去完成時。如果是現在時的假設，那就不用虛擬語氣過去時；如果是現在完成時的假設，那就不用虛擬語氣過去完成時。

Subjunctive past:

I remember him *as if* it were yesterday.

我記得他彷彿昨日一般。

Subjunctive past perfect:

She looks *as if* she had been handsome once.

她看來從前好像曾經是很秀麗的。

As if, *as though* 後面也有跟短語的，就是(1)介詞短語，(2)不定式短語，(3)分詞短語等。

(1)介詞短語:

The cloud had disappeared *as if* [they had done so] *by magic*.

雲像使魔術似地消逝了。

(2)不定式短語:

Some flowers shut up at night *as if to go to sleep*. (= ...as if they were going to sleep.)

有些花在夜裏彷彿睡覺似地閉攏了。

(3)分詞短語:

(a)As Columbus approached, the sovereigns rose, *as if* [they were] *receiving a person of the highest rank*.

當哥倫布走近時，國王們站了起來，彷彿接見官爵最高的貴人。

(b)The girl listened *as though* [she had been] *turned to stone*.

那姑娘彷彿變成了石頭似的傾聽着。

(4)形容詞短語:

She hurriedly left the room *as though* [she were] *angry*.

她好像發怒那樣急忙跑出室外去。

若要加強 *as if*, *as though* 的語氣，則附加 *as much*。例如:

He was *as much* at home at Rath Hall *as though* he had been born and bred in the neighbourhood.

他對拉斯堂非常熟悉，彷彿他曾在附近生長似的。

7. *as much as* [as if] to say

She looked *as much as to say*, "Mind your own business."

她的樣子彷彿說，“不要你管閒事”。

You said "all right", which was *as much as to say* that you were satisfied.

你說“對的”，那彷彿是說你感到滿意了。

8. like, unlike

(a) He cannot work *like* you.

他不能像你一樣工作。

(b) But, *unlike* his brother, John did not rest content with a suit of clothes.

但是約翰和他兄弟不同，並不滿足於一套衣服。

Like 是單純地表示“行爲方式”的，它的意義跟前述的 as 相同。但它不是連詞而是介詞，所以它不帶從句而帶短語，這是和 as 不同的地方。

(a) Jack's cheek glowed *like* a sooty copper kettle.

傑克的面頰像黑烟子的紫銅壺一樣黑裏泛紅。

(b) But until a postcard came from Mr. Hugh, Britling watched the postman *like* a love-sick girl.

在接到休先生的明信片以前，布利特林像一個害相思病的女孩那樣望着郵遞員。

茲再舉例將 like 和 as 的用法比較如下：

{ I am a stranger here *like* yourself.
I am a stranger here *as* you [are].

我在這裏和你一樣是個生客。

跟 like 意義正相反的是介詞 unlike:

Unlike many men of genius, Le Sage did not go through life doing spectacular things.

和許多天才不同，勒薩吉一生不曾做過名噪一時的事。

9. 口語用法的 like

Like 之後也有像 as 那樣帶從句的，但那是口語用法。

They don't marry *like* we do.

他們結婚跟我們不同。

I don't know what he meant — shouting at us *like* he did.

我不明白他那樣地對着我們喊叫是什麼意思。

10. so that (= in such a way that)

You must be careful to hold your book *so* (= in such a way) *that* the light falls on the pages.

(讀書時) 你必須注意拿書，以便得到充分的光線。

表示“行爲方式”的 *so that* 和表示“目的”與“結果”的 *so that* 極易混同，茲舉例比較如下：

(a)[行爲方式]

I stood *so that* my head did not appear.

我不露頭部而站着。

(b)[目的]

Come early *so that* we may catch the train.

爲了要趕上火車，請你早點來。

(c)[結果]

It was very cold, *so that* the river froze.

天氣嚴寒，以致河水結冰了。

So that 的 *so* 常有放在動詞前面，跟 *that* 分開的。例如：

(a) We should *so* act in this matter *that* we shall have nothing to regret. (= we should act in this matter in such a way that ...)

這件事情我們應該處理得毫無遺憾可言。

(b) They were *so* frightened *that* they did not know how to act.

他們驚慌得不知道怎樣行動才好。

11. such that (= so that)

Draw a triangle *such that* it will equal this square.

請畫一個和這正方形相等的三角形。

Such that 就是 so that 的意思。若用 in such a way (manner) that 就更具體了。

You must proceed *in such a manner that* it shall not offend the public.

你必須使你的行動不致觸怒羣衆。

代替 such-that 從句的 such-as-to 短語:

such ... that 的從句有時被縮短成 such...as to 的形式:

He did little; but the little he did *in such a manner as to* produce great effect.

他做的事很少; 但他做事雖不多, 效果却很大。

12. 分詞或分詞短語

Congratulations from all sides came *pouring in*.

賀電從各方面紛紛發來。

在 go, come 等動詞後面加分詞來說明動作的方式:

The crowd came down the street, *waving* their torches in time with the song [that] they were singing.

羣衆按他們所唱的歌的拍子舞着火把, 從街上向這邊走來。

13. what

Intellect is to mind *what* (=just as) sight is to the body.

智力之於精神, 正如視力之於身體。

What 是 just (in the same relation) as 的意思。

Reading is to the mind *what* exercise is to the body.

讀書之於精神，正像運動之於身體。

VI. 程度、比例和比較 (Degree, Proportion And Comparison)

本節所述的是，諸如 *as bold as a lion*, *bolder than a lion* 那種表示“比較”，或諸如 *so bold that he put his hand into my pocket* 那種表示“程度”，以及像表示“比例”的語句，如：*The more he gets, the more he wants.* 或 *You get wiser as you get older.* 等等。

1. as...as

The students got *as many books as* they needed.

學生們得到的書正如他們所需要的那麼多。

表示同一“程度”或“相等”用 *as* (*good, fast, many books, etc.*) *as* 的形式。表示“程度”的從句是由形容詞，副詞或名詞（代詞）構成的：

(a) Take *as much as* you want.

你要多少就拿多少。

(b) Life is too short to be interested in everything, but it is good to be interested in *as many things as* [they] are necessary to fill our days.

生命是非常短促的，要對一切事物發生興趣實不可能；但對事物盡可能多發生興趣以使時光不致虛度，那是有益的。

As-clause 的主語有時是省略的。例如：

(a) You may have *as* many *as* [they] fill the basket.

請裝滿籃子。

(b) You seemed to understand human nature *as well as* [you] do (=understand) science.

你不但通曉科學，而且似乎同樣也洞悉人情。

如上例(b)所示，*as...as* 有時有“不但……而且”的意思。

再如：

John, who was *as* humane *as* he was brave, was shocked at this incident. (= John, who was not only brave but also humane, was...)

約翰不但勇敢而且富有人情，所以聽到這個事件非常震驚。

現在再將可以看作 *as* (much, hard) *as*, *so* (much, hard) *as* 的省略形式略舉如下：

(a) There was silence [as] deep *as* death; and the boldest held his breath for a time.

死一般的靜寂，連最大膽的人也暫時屏息了。

(b) The official's face was [as] white *as* snow, and looked just like a corpse's.

那官吏的面孔白得和雪一般，看去好像死屍的面孔似的。

(c) Of course, our winters here in Chicago are not [so] mild *as* in your native California.

當然，芝加哥的冬天不像你的家鄉加利福尼亞那樣暖和。

2. 動詞省略的*as...as*

Cultivation to the mind, is *as* necessary *as* food to the body [is].

修養之於精神，跟食物之於身體一樣是必要的。

As...as的從句常有省略的地方，它的省略形式，大概有下列三種：

(1)主句與從句(as-clause)的主語不同的場合：

(a)I have *as* many books *as* you [have].

我的書籍像你的一樣多。

(b)Tom's delight was *as* great *as* his friend's [delight was].

湯姆像他的朋友一樣高興。

(2)主句與從句(as-clause)的主語同一的場合：

(a)Work is *as* necessary for peace of mind *as* [it is necessary] for health of body.

勞動對於精神的安寧是必要的，正像勞動對於身體的健康是必要的一樣。

(b)We are *as* liable to be corrupted by bad books, *as* [we are liable to be corrupted] by evil companions.

我們容易被壞書籍所腐蝕，正像我們容易受壞友伴的影響一樣。

(3)作為as-clause 將 *as if*, *as though*與主句緊接：

(a)And there stands Peter, *as* calm *as* [he would stand] *if* nothing had happened.

彼得悠然站在那兒，彷彿不曾發生過什麼事故似的。

(b) But certainly those eggs we got were *as* fresh *as* [they would be] *if* they had been new-laid.

但我們所購得的這些雞蛋，確實新鮮得好像剛生出來的一般。

(c)His children, too, were *as* ragged and wild *as* [they would be] *if* they belonged to nobody.

他的孩子們也是衣裳破爛和行動粗野得像沒有爺娘管教的。

在as...as的從句中，有將第二個as以下的語句完全省略的。例

如:

Cleopatra, I can tell you, had eyes *as black as yours*, and shoulders almost *as beautiful* [as yours are].

我敢擔保，克利奧佩特拉的眼睛像你的一樣烏黑，肩膀幾乎和你的一樣美。

在英語裏表示“幾倍”或“幾分之幾”，也用as...as的形式。

Africa is *three times as large as* the United States.

非洲有美國的三倍大。

The dining-room was *about two-thirds as large as* the drawing room, and it contained *about one quarter as much* furniture [as the drawing room].

食堂大約有客廳的三分之二大，裏面的傢俱約為客廳傢俱的四分之一。

3. (not) so...as

I am *not so* sure of it *as* you are.

關於這事我不像你那麼清楚。

這是前兩項所述的as-clause的否定用法。依語法規則，系用not so (sure, hard) as的形式。但前面有否定語時，只用so...as。例如:

(a) *No* person is either *so* happy or *so* unhappy *as* he imagines.
像他所想像那樣幸福或不幸的人是沒有的。

(b) In all the countryside there was *no* garden *so* lovely *as* his.
在全鄉沒有一座花園像他的(花園)那麼美麗。

So...as也可用as...as這個肯定的形式去代替它；它用在否定句中時，當然也必須有否定語。

(a) *No ideal is as (=so) good as a fact.*

無論什麼理想，總不如事實。

(b) *Few treasures are worth as (=so) much as a friend who is wise and helpful.*

明哲而又肯幫助人的朋友，其價值不可勝計。

So...as中的第二個as以下的語句，也可以省略。例如：

Be so kind as to tell me if your pen is as good as mine. ———

It is not so good [as yours is].

恕我問一聲，你的鋼筆有我一樣好嗎？——沒有那麼好。

4. not so much ...as

The men who do the greatest things do them not so much by fitful efforts, as by steady, continued toil.

成就最偉大的事業的人之獲得成就，與其說是由於作概無常的努力，不如說是由於堅持不懈的辛勤勞動。

It is not so much the being exempt from faults, as having overcome them, that is an advantage to us.

對我們有益的，與其說是沒有缺點，不如說是克服缺點。

Not so much...as可以用less...than代替。例如：

Experience shows that success is due less (=not so much) to ability than(=as) to zeal. The winner is he who gives himself to his work, body and soul.

經驗告訴我們：成功與其說由於才能，不如說由於熱誠。成功者是全心全意傾注於事業的人。

Not so much...as的as有時改用but：

And the question is not so much whether these safety measures are effective, but(=as) whether they are being observed.

問題不在這些安全措施是否有效，而在於人們是否遵守它們。

5. as (as much as的省略形式)

(a) Men may fear war *as* they fear death. (= Men may fear war as much as they fear death.)

有些人會像害怕死那樣害怕戰爭。

(b) You will reap *as* you sow (=reap as much as you sow).

種多少收多少。

As much as的省略形式as有如上兩種用法: (a)例表示“程度”；(b)例表示“比例”；(b)例中的as也可用in proportion as, according as來表示。它和表示“行爲方式”的as極易混淆，應予注意。

Virgil is not a supreme poet in the portrayal of character *as* Homer was.

威吉爾作爲詩人，在性格描寫上不及荷馬卓絕。

6. in proportion as

(a) You gain skill *in proportion as* you practice.

實踐越多就越熟練。

(b) The price of commodities is *in proportion as* the labour costs in it.

商品的價格是和所花的勞動成正比例的。

In proportion as表示“比例”，較as更爲明確，有to the extent that的意思。它後面概接從句。倘若和名詞短語連用，則須用in proportion to。例如：

Man is arrogant *in proportion to* his ignorance.

越是無知的人，越發妄自尊大。

7. according as (=in proportion as)

Men will reap *according as* they sow.

種得愈多，收穫也愈多。

According as 是 to the extent that 的意思，和前項的 *in proportion as* 相似。*according as* 應與從句連用；*according to* 則與短語連用。

(a) You gain skill *according as* you have ability. (= ...*according to your ability*.)

愈有才能，則技巧愈好。

(b) The shadow [which is] cast by an object is long or short *according as* the sun is high up in the heavens or near the horizon.

物體的投影之長短，由太陽高懸天空或接近地平線而定。

8. (more) than

The boy who today studies science at school knows *more of* the universe about him *than* even Newton knew.

今日在學校裏學科學的少年，對於自己周圍的宇宙知道得比牛頓還多。

(More, less) *than* 是表示“比較”的語句中最常見的，和 *than*-clause 相對照的先行比較句，是以名詞，形容詞，副詞構成的。

[名詞]

Wise men learn *more* (= more things) from fools *than* fools learn from wise men.

智者從愚者身上學到的，比愚者從智者身上學到的多。

[形容詞]

These are *more beautiful than* the other pictures [are].

這些畫比其他的畫更美。

[副詞]

Richard came *more promptly than* John [did].

理查比約翰到來得快些。

9. than-clause 的省略

(a) 動詞省略:

None preaches *better than* the ant [does] and she says nothing.

沒有東西比螞蟻更善於說教，但螞蟻是沉默不言的。

(b) 主語省略:

They play *more than* [they] work.

他們的遊玩比工作要多。

(c) 主語與動詞省略:

Life must be measured *rather by depth than* [it must be measured] by length.

人生與其以長度來測量，不如以深度來測量。

Than-clause 的主語與動詞如果跟主句的相同，就可省略，以免重複。

(a) They were evidently much *more* puzzled and interested *than* [they were] either horrified or distressed.

他們顯然感覺非常迷惑而有趣，並不感到恐怖或苦惱。

(b) The patient is *better than* [he was] when I wrote you last.

目前病人 [的病情] 比上次我寫信給你時有了起色。

含有 *more (less) than* 的慣用語

(A) no more than; not any more than

(a) Passive reading will *not* strengthen the brain *any more than* sitting in a gymnasium will develop the body.

被動讀書是不會使腦筋發達的，正如端坐在體育館裏不會使人身體發達一樣。

(b) Science and art *no more contradict each other than* light and electricity [contradict each other].

科學和藝術同光與電一樣，是互不衝突的。

(B) no (not) less than (=quite as...as)

We must be doing something to be happy. Action is *no less* necessary to us *than* thought. (= Action is quite as necessary to us as thought [is]).

我們必須做事才能得到幸福，行動對我們的必要性是不亞於思想的。

(C) little better than (=little less than)

He knew that he was *little better than* a liar.

他曉得自己幾乎不比說謊者好多少。

(D) little less than

To be uncourteous appears to him *little less than* crime.

無禮貌在他看來幾乎是一種罪惡（與罪惡同）。

10. so...that

I am *so* tired *that* I cannot work.

我疲勞得不能工作。

So (many, hard) that 的構句在本章Ⅲ“結果”(Result)中已經敘述過了，現在再作簡單的說明：這個 that-clause 和先行的so 互相呼應，具有一定的“程度”的意義；同時，它又表現出了 so-clause 的動作的“結果”。

(a)The fog soon became *so* dense *that* it was all we could do to find our way, the guide-posts being well-nigh invisible.

霧不久就變得非常濃了，路標幾乎看不見，因而我們只好盡力摸索路徑。

(b)The floors were in *so* rotten a condition *that* many of them could not be scrubbed.

地板霉爛得有許多地方已不能洗刷了。

That-clause 的 *that* 在口語中常被省略：

(a)Baby was *so* ill this morning [that] I thought we should lose her.

今天早上小孩病得很厲害，竟使我覺得我們保不住她了。

(b)I've been *so* busy these last ten days, [that] I could not even inquire after you.

最近十天內我非常忙，甚至來問候您的工夫都沒有。

在口語中，又有將 *that*-clause 放在句首，而由那個含有 *so* 的主句來說明它：

(a)I don't know what to do, I feel *so* happy.(= I feel *so* happy *that* I don't know what to do.)

我樂不可支。

(b)The youth could scarcely stand, *so* faint was he from illness.

這青年因病以致身體虛弱得幾乎不能站立。

11. *so much...that; so much so that*

I am *so much* fatigued *that* I cannot work.

我疲憊得不能工作。

So much (fatigued) *that* 是比前項 *so* (fatigued) *that* 的語氣更

強的形式。欲更加強“程度”的語氣，則用 *so much so that*。例如：

Sometimes the cold was intense, *so much so that* raw eggs were frozen as hard as if boiled.

有時天氣非常寒冷，以致生蛋凍得彷彿煮過似的堅硬。

12. *such...that*

(a) We raised *such* a cry *that* help came at once. (= We cried so loud that help came at once.)

我們喊得很響，以致援救立刻來了。

(b) The weather was *such* (=so hot) *that* I could not go out.

天氣酷熱得不能出去。

So(many, hard) *that* 和形容詞或副詞連用；而 *such*(a cry) *that* 則常和名詞連用。

such...that 的 *that* 跟 *so...that* 的 *that* 同樣，在口語中常被省略：

We were in *such* a hurry [that] we could not wait for uncle to bring us from the station.

我們非常匆促，以致不能等待叔父把我們從車站帶來。

Such that 可以用 *so great*(hot, etc.) *that* 來代替。例如：

(a) The difference is *such* (=so great) *that* all will perceive it.

差別大得誰都看得出來。

(b) *Such* (= So great) is the accomplishment of our national economic construction, *that* we are always happy when we think of it.

我們的國民經濟建設的成就如此巨大，每當想到時，不勝欣喜。

13. so...as to

(a) I have not walked *so far as to* be tired.

我走得不遠，不覺得累。

(b) He was *so kind as to* help me.

他親切地幫助我。

前幾項所述的都是 *that* 所引導的從句；本項所述則為 *as* 所引導的不定式短語 (*so as to* 也有表示“結果”的用法)。又有爲了加強語氣，在 *so as to* 之前加 *so much* 的。例如：

Her attendant kept herself modestly in the background, *so much so as* hardly *to* be distinguished.

她的侍女謙遜地站在後面，以致幾乎不爲人所察覺。

又有用 *such as to* 來表示 *so...as to* 的意思的。例如：

(a) His very person and appearance were *such* (= *so imposing*) *as to* strike the attention of the most casual observer.

他的人品與風度這般動人，以致引起偶然相遇者的注意。

(b) You can't be *such* a fool *as to* be jealous of her!

你總不會愚蠢到對她嫉妒吧！

14. but that

I am not so old *but that* I may learn. (= I am *not* so old *that* I may not learn.)

我還沒有老到不能學習。

But that 的 *that* 也可省略。例如：

There is no vice so simple *but* [that] may become serious in time.

沒有任何微小的惡習終究不會引起重大罪惡的。

15. the十比較級

(a) *The sooner* you come back, *the better* it will be.

你回來越早越好。

(b) *The more* learned a man is, *the more* modest he is.

一個人愈有學問就愈謙虛。

The more...the more 是“愈……愈……”，“越……越……”的意思；the more...the less 是“越……越不……”的意思；它們都是表示“比例”的。

(a) *The more* a man knows, *the more* he discovers his ignorance.

一個人懂得越多，就越覺得自己懂得太少。(學而後知不足。)

(b) *The more* he thought, *the less* he liked it.

他越想越不喜歡它了。

(c) Advice is like snow; *the softer* it falls, *the longer* it dwells upon [the mind], and *the deeper* it sinks into the mind.

忠告像雪一樣：來得越和緩，則留在心裏越長久，沁入心中也越深。

The more...the more 結構中的動詞 to be 常常省略。有時連主語也一併略去。例如：

(a) *The sooner* [you are], *the better* [it is].

越快越好。

(b) *The more* [people there are], *The merrier* [it is].

人越多越快樂。

(c) *The smaller* the mind [is], *the greater* the conceit [is].

心地愈狹，則愈自大。

16. too+不定式

(a) Iron is *too heavy to float*.

鐵重得不能浮起。

(b) It is never *too late to give up our prejudices*.

拋棄偏見決不會嫌晚。

Too(heavy) to(float) 是 so heavy that it can't float 的意思，也是表示“程度”的。

I think *too highly of him to suppose* that he would do that.

把他看得很高，所以沒有想到他會做那樣的事。

這種句法跟 too 作 very 的意思用的類似語句極易混淆，應該特別注意，這時 too 前有 only 一詞。

(a) I shall be only *too pleased to help* you.

替你幫忙我是非常高興的。

(b) I am only *too glad(too delighted)to do* this for you.

爲你做這件事，我真高興極了。

17. too+for

We are never *too old for learning*. (=We are never too old to learn.)

決無過老以致不能學的道理。

(a) It is *too old for further use*.

這東西太舊，不能再用了。

(b) My emotion is *too great for words*.

我的感動非言語所能形容。

18. 表示程度的介詞短語

But each can act his part honestly and honourably and *to the best of his ability*(=as well as he can).

但各人都可以忠實而光榮地竭全力以盡自己的本分。

用 *to* 表示“程度”或“限度”(limit)的慣用語如下:

to the extreme; *to the last degree* 非常地, 極度地

to a certain degree(*extent*) 有幾分, 多少地

to a man 全體, 一人不剩地

to the letter, *to the syllable* 一字不易地, 毫無出入地

(a) In this, *to a certain extent*, he was right.

在這點上, 他是有幾分對的。

(b) The nation is behind him *to a man*.

全國一致做他的後盾。

(c) Prospero: — But then exactly do all points of my command.

Ariel: *To the syllable*.

普羅伯洛: 但你要完全照我的命令辦理。

阿里爾: 完全照辦。

上述的 *degree*, *extent* 等有用 *to such an extent*(*a degree*) *that*, *to that degree*(*extent*) *that* 來引導從句的。例如:

He laughed *to that degree that* it was impossible for me not to laugh too.

他笑得使我也忍不住笑了。

現在再舉用 *by* 構成表示“程度”, “計算標準”等的慣用語如下:

(a) The exportations of raw silk have increased *by* 15 percent.

生絲的輸出增加了百分之十五。

(b)Some goods are sold *by* the pound, others *by* the yard.

商品之中有的以磅計算，有的以碼計算。

(c)He is gaining experience *by* degrees.

他正逐漸獲得經驗。

(d)He was defeated by Mr.William Windyer *by* six votes.

他以六票之差爲威廉·溫德耶所敗。

19. 數量表現法(Measures)

This box was *three feet and a half long, three feet broad and two and a half feet deep.*

這箱子長三英尺半，闊三英尺，深二英尺半。

最常用的計量(measure)有: length (長), breadth, width (幅, 闊), height (高), depth (深); diameter (直徑), circumference (周圍); distance (距離); age (年齡), 等等。一切表示這種計量的數字，都是以量來限制 long, wide, high, 等等。也可以用 in length, in width, in height, in depth 等介詞短語來代替。

(a)The bird is about *six inches long*(= in length), and weighs three quarters of an ounce.

那鳥身長約六英寸，重四分之三盎司。

(b)The man was *five feet seven inches tall*(= in height).

那人身長五英尺七英寸。

(c)In some places, the ocean is *ten thousand miles wide*(= in width).

有些地方，海洋闊達一萬英里。

(d) The water was nowhere *more than five feet deep*(= in depth).

不論何處，水深都不超出五英尺。

(e)The lake is *fifty miles across* (=in diameter).

那湖直徑五十英里。

VII. 除外(Exception)

所謂“除外”，就是對於主句的陳述內容附加例外的事實。這個狀語成分可以是從句，也可以是短語。

(a)phrase:

Everyone is ready *except you*.

除你以外，大家都已準備好了。

(b)clause:

He did well *except that he failed in Latin*.

他除拉丁文不及格外，其他都考得很好。

1. beyond (=except)

(a)He did nothing *beyond* writing one letter.

他除寫了一封信外，一點事情也沒有做。

(b)He did not really know what he was going to say, *beyond that* the situation demanded something romantic.

除了在那情況下必須說一些怪誕的話以外，他實在不曉得將說些什麼。

Of Oliver Edwards, nothing, I believe, is known *beyond* the fact that he had been at Pembroke college with Dr. Johnson. 關於奧利威·愛德華茲，我相信除他曾在潘布魯克大學與約翰遜博士同學以外，人們對他毫無所知。

2. but (=except)

(a) No one knows it *but* you and I.

除你和我外，沒有人知道這個。

(b) He did nothing *but* write one letter.

除寫了一封信外，他沒有做任何事情。

But 跟 except 一樣，引導名詞，代詞，不定式和介詞短語。

(a) I have no secret of success *but* (=except) hard work.

除努力工作外，我沒有其他成功的秘訣。

(b) He looked around, but could see nothing *but* a crow winging its solitary flight across the mountain.

他環顧了一下，只見一隻烏鴉孤單地鼓翼飛過山去。

含有 *but* 的特殊短語：

(1) nothing *but* = only (僅，只)

He did *nothing but* laugh.

他只是笑。

(2) anything *but* = not at all

He was *anything but* a weakling.

他決不是懦夫。

(3) all *but* = almost

I was *all but* run over by a car last night.

昨晚我險兒些被車輾死。

3. but that (=except that)

I can not see *but that* my daughter Elaine will die for your sake.

我只覺得我的女兒愛蓮將為你而死。

But(=except)在前項是引導短語;而在本項則引導從句。

You are ignorant who you are or where you come from, and you know no more of me *but that* I am your father and live in this poor cave.

你不曉得自己是什麼人, 來自何處; 對於我你也只知道我是你的父親和住在這破洞中罷了。

這個 *that*-clause 常爲了簡潔而省略作不定式。

She does nothing *but* [that she does] laugh.
她只是笑。

4. *except* (=but); *except that* (=but that)

(a) Everyone is ready *except* you.

除你以外, 大家都已準備好了。

(b) No man ever became great or good *except* through many and great mistakes.

從未有人不經過許多大錯就成爲偉人或完人。

Except 表示“除外”的意思, 大體上有兩種形式:

(1)後面跟名詞, 代詞或介詞短語。

(a) *Except* a living man there is nothing more wonderful than a book.

除了活人以外, 再沒有比書籍更奇妙的東西了。

(b) Nothing can do me damage *except* myself.

除我自己以外, 沒有東西能加害於我。

(c) We could go *except* at four o'clock or near that hour.

除四點鐘或四點鐘前後外, 我們都能去的。

(2)後面跟狀語從句

I take a walk every day *except* when it rains.

除下雨天外，我每天都散步。

Except that 是引導名詞從句的：

We lay there a long time in silence, *except that* Webb groaned every now and then.

除了韋伯不時發出呻吟聲以外，很長一段時間我們躺在那裏一聲不響。

注意：except that 的 that 有時省略：

No honest Christian would sit on such a jury *except* [*that*] he felt himself thoroughly imbued with toleration.

除非他覺得他具有充分的容忍精神，沒有一個誠實的基督教徒會肯參加這樣一個陪審團的。

except for = except

She is absolutely alone *except for* her son.

除了兒子以外，絕對沒有別人和她在一起。

5. excepting (= except)

There was now nobody in the schoolroom *excepting* Miss Grain.

除格蓮女士外，現在教室裏一個人也沒有。

All the splendid furniture of his late residence had been sold, *excepting* his wife's harp.

除了他妻子的豎琴之外，他把他故居裏所有華麗的傢俱都賣掉了。

介詞 *excepting* 有現在分詞的形式，但它的用法在今日幾乎與 *except* 完全相同。

又有用 *excepted* 來表示同樣的意思的。這時應取獨立短語 (*absolute phrase*) 的形式，主語是一定要有的：

Upon this he spoke words to me, and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were pleasant to hear; for they were the first sound of a man's voice that I heard, my own [being] *excepted*, for above twenty-five years.

於是他向我說話了，雖然我不懂他話的意思，但我覺得很好聽，因為除我自己的聲音以外，這是我二十五年多以來第一次聽到的人語聲。

跟 *excepting*, *excepted* 的用法相似的，有 *apart from*, *aside from*, *with the exception of*，等等。

(a) *Apart from* the question of expense, it is too late.

費用問題姑且不談，時間也太晚了。

(b) *Aside from* this statement, he refused to talk.

除這個陳述之外，他不肯再說什麼。

(c) The building will cost about \$2,500,000, *exclusive of* the machinery equipment.

那房子除機械裝備不計外，約需二百五十萬元。

(d) The Canal system in China is the most extensive in the world *with the exception of* The Netherlands.

中國的運河系統，除荷蘭外，是世界上最大的。

6. *save* (= *except*); *save that* (= *except that*)

(a) All is lost *save* honour.

除名譽外，一切都喪失了。

(b) He did well *save that* he failed in Latin.

除拉丁文不及格外，其餘他都考得很好。

Save 就是 *except* 的意思，後面一般帶短語。它原是介詞，後面所帶的賓語用賓格，如 *Nobody went save me*。但很多作家都

認為 *save* 後面的名詞與主語同位而用主格，*save that* 後面則帶從句。

(a) I do entreat you, not a man depart, *save* I alone, till Antony have *spoken*.

我請求你們，除我以外，在安東尼未把話說完以前，一個人都不要走開。

(b) In this life we get nothing *save* by effort.

在這一一生中，我們除了靠努力外，任何事情都不會成功。

(c) At this hour the great tunnel was quiet *save* when a train roared above.

在這時分，除火車在上面轟轟而響的時間外，大隧道是靜寂無聲的。

(d) The Greek lay there motionless and insensible, *save that* now and then his lips gave vent to some vague raving sounds.

那希臘人除時時從嘴裏發出一些含糊的譫語聲以外，不省人事地躺在那裏。

Save 有 *saving*, *saving that*, *save for* 等短語。

(a) *Saving* his eyesight, he was as well as ever.

除視力外，他健全如常。

(b) The bar was empty *save for* the landlord.

酒吧間中除老板外，一個人也沒有。

(c) *Saving that* he failed in Latin, he did well.

除拉丁文不及格外，其餘他都考得很好。

7. *only that* (= *except that*)

I have nothing against him, *only that* I dislike his manner.

我除憎惡他的態度以外，並沒有反對他的地方。

在口語中，only that 的 that 常常省略。例如：

“Is anything the matter with my Madeline?”—“No, papa, *only* I have got a headache.”

“瑪黛琳，你怎麼了？”“沒有什麼，爸爸，只是有點頭痛。”

8. other than (=except)

The man was none *other than* Jones.

那人不是別人，正是瓊斯。

(a) The tall figure that we saw was no *other than* the famous footballer.

我們所看見的那個人不是別人，正是那位著名的足球員。

(b) He had visited every *other* country *than* Japan.

他訪問過日本以外的每個國家。

(c) What result can you expect *other than* disgrace?

除了丟臉外，你還能指望什麼呢？

IX. 地點(Place)

要敘述某事的發生，總要用表示事件發生地點的副詞或狀語短語。

副詞：

He lives *there*.

狀語短語：

He lives *over there*.

He lives *on that street*.

He lives *across the street*.

他住在街的對面。

但當用了這種狀語短語仍不能完全表明“地點”時，就要用狀語從句了。

They live *where* (= the place where) *the road crosses* the river.
他們住在路和河交叉的地方。

這就是說，在敘述他們的住所時，要表明是在“路和河交叉”的地方，就必須用連詞 *where* 來連接這兩個事實。這就是狀語從句。

1. *where*

(a) Go *where* you see the road.

朝你所見的路走去。

(b) *Where* there is a will, there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

連詞 *where* 有兩種意義：(1)含有“動”(motion)的意義，即 to the place at (in) which 之意，它的先行動詞是諸如 go 這種表示“行動”的動詞；(2)含有“靜止”(rest)的意義，即 at (in) the place in which 之意，它的先行動詞是諸如 be 這種表示“靜止”的動詞。

(a) Let me take you [to the place] *where* you live.

我陪你到你住的地方去吧。

(b) Corn flourishes best [in the place] *where* the ground is rich.

穀物在土壤肥沃的地方長得最茂盛。

Where-clause 常有顛倒了位置放在句首的。例如：

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

Where 的特殊用法：

(1) *where* 含有 the point on which 的意味：

(a) That's just *where* you are wrong.

那正是你錯誤之處。

(b) Persistent people begin their success *where* others end in failure.

不屈不撓的人，從別人失敗的地方開始取得成功。

(2) *where* 含有 *though, although* 的意味：

Where the ancients knew nothing we know a little.

古人一點不懂的事，我們却懂得一些。

2. *whence* (= to or at the place from which)

Go back *whence* you came. (= Go back where you came from).

從那裏來，回到那裏去。

Whence 這一個詞，今日只用於古體的散文或詩歌中，口語中不用，以 *where from* 代替。

3. *whither* (= to the place which; where)

(a) Let him go *whither* he will go. (= Let him go where he will go.)

他願到那裏去，就讓他到那裏去。

(b) Then *whither* he goes, *thither* let me go.

那末，讓我到他所去的地方去吧。

Whither 這一個詞在口語中是不用的，它只用於詩歌或古雅的散文中。

下面例句中的 *whither* 是作形容詞用的，試加以比較：

The city *whither* they were going was far distant.

他們要去的那個城市極其遙遠。

4. wherever, wheresoever

(a) Sit *wherever* (= any where) you like.

你喜歡坐在哪裏就坐在那裏吧。

(b) Have you ever gone through a flax field in blossom? That beautiful sight greets us *wherever* (= everywhere) we look.

你曾走過開着花的亞麻田嗎？不論我們向哪裏看，那美麗的景色總是呈現在我們眼前。

Wherever 的語氣比 *where* 強；而 *wheresoever* 則比 *wherever* 更強。

Wheresoever a thinker appeared, *there* in the thing he thought of was a contribution.

凡是思想家出現之處，他總是對自己所思考的事情作出貢獻。

Wherever 和 *wheresoever* 跟 *where* 一樣，多用於句首。附有 *-ever* 或 *-soever* 時，一般兼含“讓步”的意思。試比較下面兩句：

Wherever there is smoke, there is fire.

凡有烟的地方必定有火。

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

X. 時間(Time)

一切動作或事件都和時間有關，因而敘述某一動作或情況發生的時間及其繼續時間是必要的。敘述時有時可以用一個詞或一個短語，如：now, then, tomorrow, a long time ago, at the present day,

before supper, 等等。

詞或短語:

He is here *now*.

He came *at (after, before) 5 o'clock*.

He has been here *for a long time*.

He has been here *since last Sunday*.

He will stay here *during the holiday*.

He is to stay here *till next Monday*.

但有時我們要使某一動作的時間和另一動作的時間發生關聯以求明晰，那就得用時間從句 (time clause) 了。

從句:

He came *before (after) the clock struck five*.

It is a long time *since he came*.

He will stay here *while (as long as) the holidays last*.

He will not go home *till (until) school begins again*.

It will be a long time *before he leaves*.

時間從句是用來限制動詞的，所以也是一種狀語從句。引導時間從句的詞如 *after, before, when, since* 等本身是表示“時間”的，我們可依它們各自獨有的意義加以選用。

主句與從句的時態關係

表示“時間”的從句，在時間上對主句的動作加以限制，有時兩個從句的時態大體上一致；有時則表示事件的先後，如 *after, before, since* 等，同主句的時態有所差異。例如:

(a) He *went* home when the sun *set*.

He *did* not go home until the sun *set*.

(b) He *went* home *after* the sun *had set*.

He *had gone* home *before* the sun *set*.

He *has done* many things *since* he *came* home.

對於表示“時間”的從句應該注意的是：主句的時態如果是將來時，從句的時態不用將來時或將來完成時，而用現在時或現在完成時。例如：

He *will* go home when the sun *sets*.

He *will* go home after he *has finished* his work.

1. when

(a) It was raining *when* we started.

我們出發時天正下着雨。

(b) He will go *when* he has had his dinner.

他將吃了午飯再去。

When-clause 有兩種截然不同的用法：(1)表示純粹的“時間”；(2)在時間的觀念中多少帶點“條件”或“理由”的意味。

(1)表示純粹的時間：

His mother died *when* Ted was eight years old.

特德八歲上死了母親。

(2)when 中含有條件的意味：

There can be no freedom in the world *when* men must beg for jobs.

如果人們必須乞求職業時，世界上是不會有自由的。

(3)when 中含有理由的意味：

How can I convince him *when* he will not listen?

他既不願意聽，我怎能說服他呢？

When-clause 又有一種應該注意的用法，即像 *when he says ... he is right* 等句子，是 *in saying ... he is right* 的意思。

(a) *When* I say human existence, I mean my own!

我所謂人生，是指我自己的一生呀！

(b) Your aunt spoke the truth, indeed, *when* she said you were a strange girl.

你姑母說你是個怪女孩，確實不錯。

此外 *when* 又有如 *although* (表示“讓步”)，*just then* (並列連詞) 的用法：

(a) We were about to start *when* (= *just then*) it began to rain.

我們正要出發，天却下起雨來了。

(b) He keeps on talking *when* (= *though*) he knows it annoys us.

他雖曉得饒舌使我們不快，却仍繼續喋喋不休。

2. *while*; *whilst*

(a) Sit down *while* you are waiting.

請坐着等。

(b) He read *whilst* the others sang.

別人唱歌時他讀書。

(c) Birds sang *while* it rained.

天雖下雨，鳥仍在啼。

While 的古體 *whilst*，今日仍極通用，尤其在英國。它的用法跟 *while* 完全相同。

While 和介詞 *during* 在用法上頗多共通之點；只是 *while* 後面帶從句，而 *during* 後面帶短語罷了。

介詞：

During his brief residence in London, Scott lost his dear friend George Ellis. (= *While* he resided briefly in London, Scott...)

司各脫在倫敦短暫旅居時，失去了好友喬治·埃利斯。

連詞:

I met him *while* I was travelling. (=... during my travelling.)

在旅行中我碰到了他。

While 又有 and (而) 和 but (然而) 的意思。例如:

Janes was dressed in green *while* Marry was dressed in blue.

簡斯穿着綠色的衣服，而瑪麗則穿藍衣。

While (whilst) clause 的省略形式:

While (whilst) clause 的主語如果跟主句的主語相同，則主語和動詞都可省略，而被省略的動詞往往是 be (is, am, are, was, were)。

(a) Do not read *while* [you are] eating.

吃東西時不要唸書。

(b) *While* [he was] waiting for the water to boil, he held his face over the stove.

他一面等水燒開，一面探頭看爐子。

3. after

After the silkworm has finished its cocoon it goes to sleep.

蠶做完了繭後就安息了。

After-clause 是用現在時替代將來時或將來完成時；用現在完成時替代將來完成時，也可用過去時替代過去完成時。

(a) *After* you send the message, *come* back here.

你送了這信之後，請回到這裏來。

(b) I will sign the contract the day *after* I come back. (=...after I shall have come back.)

在我回來後，我們即簽訂這項合同。

(c) He stood motionless *after* she disappeared (= had disappeared).

在她走後，他呆立不動。

(d) I shall write to you *after* I *have seen* (= shall have seen) her.

我看到她後，就寫信給你。

After-clause 因略嫌冗長，常被縮短成短語。例如：

(a) *After ringing* he retired into the shade.

他按鈴後，就去樹蔭下休息。

(b) *After her mother's death* she felt very sad. (= After her mother died, she ...)

她母親死後，她感到非常悲傷。

(c) *After having finished my task*, I went to bed.

我做完工作後就睡覺了。

又有用副詞或狀語短語來限定 after-clause 的。例如：

Life is not always hard, *even after* back grows bent.

甚至在腰背彎了以後(年老)，也不一定就感到生活是艱辛的。

After 的特殊用法

(1) in consequence of, as the result of:

I shall not go *after* what has happened.

因為發生了這事，我不去了。

(2) in spite of:

After all my trouble he has learnt nothing.

儘管我很費心，他仍是什麼也學不會。

4. before

He died *before* I was born.

他在我出生前就死了。

(a) We waited a long time *before* the train arrived.

我們等候了好久，火車才到。

(b) I had not waited long *before* he came.

我等不多久他就來了。

像在 *after* 一項中所述，在以 *after*, *before*, *when* 等開始的狀語從句中，動詞的時態不用將來時，而用現在時。

(a) It will be long *before* we [shall] meet again.

要過許久我們才會再見。

(b) I shall be gone *before* you [will] wake in the morning.

在明天早晨你醒來以前我已走了。

Before 也有作介詞用，而將從句縮短成短語的：

We must stop and rest *before going* (= *before we go*) any farther.

我們必須停下來休息一下再向前走。

Before 的特殊用法：

Before 有作 *rather than* 的意思用的。例如：

介詞：

He would die *before* yielding.

他寧死不屈。

連詞：

He will die *before* he shall disgrace himself.

他寧死也不肯受辱。

關於 *scarcely* (*hardly*) *before* 的構句，可以參看 *as soon as* 項。

5. *until*; *till*

(a) Wait *till* I come.

等到我來。

(b) Please wait *until* I come.

請等到我來。

(c) These he read and re-read *until* he knew them by heart.

他把這些句子讀了又讀，終於背熟了。

Till, until 的用法，大概有兩種：(1)用作主句的動作的前提，相當於漢語的“迄”，“直到”；(2)表示由主句的動作而產生的結果，即“終至”的意思。

(1)*until, till* 含有 *after* 的意思：這時主句中的否定式沒有否定的意思了，而相當於漢語的“剛才”。

(a) It was not, however, *until* the steam-engine was invented that coal-mining became an important industry.

但直到蒸氣機發明之後，採煤業才成爲一種重要的產業。

(b) Children do not know how their parents love them; and they *never* will *till* the grave closes over those parents, or *till* they have children of their own.

做兒女的是不懂得父母如何愛他們的；直到雙親死後或他們自己有了兒女之後才能體會到。

(c) After this, they conversed on different subjects *until* they arrived at their journey's end.

此後，他們談東說西，一直談到旅途終點。

(2)*until, till* 含有 *unless* 的意思：

He did not go to bed *until* Marry had returned at midnight.

他等到瑪麗半夜回來時才去睡覺。

(3)*untill, till* 有 *and finally* (終至)的意思：

(a) The road got ever worse *until* there was none at all.

道路越來越壞，終至完全沒有路了。

(b) Presently it began to rain, the drops fell faster and faster, *till* there was a regular torrent.

不久天就下起雨來，雨點越落越緊，終於變成傾盆大雨。

Until- 或 till-clause 的主語如果跟主句的主語相同，則 until- 或 till-clause 中的主語和動詞 be 可以省略。例如：

(a) John, don't speak *until* [you are] spoken to.

約翰，在沒有人向你說話以前，請勿發言。

(b) He refused to leave his post *untill* [he was] ordered to do so.

在未接到命令前他不肯離職。

6. as

(a) You will grow wiser *as* you grow older.

你將隨着年齡的增長而越來越明智。

(b) The tears rose into her eyes, *as* she listened to the tale.

她聽這故事時，眼裏含着淚。

(c) Maxwell laughed *as* he spoke.

麥克威爾且說且笑。

表示“時間”的連詞 *as* 的用法如下：

(1) 含有 *when* 的意思：

It was just beginning to rain *as* I awoke.

我醒來時，天剛開始下雨。

As 前加 *just* 是表示兩樁事件在時間上接近。例如：

Just as I was coming downstairs there was another ring at the door.

我正下樓，門鈴又響了。

(2) 含有 *while* 的意思：

I dare not let my mind be idle *as* I walk in the field.

當我在田野散步時，我也不敢無所用心。

(3)含有 according as 的意思:

You will reap *as* you sow.

種瓜得瓜，種豆得豆。

(4)相當於漢語的〔且……且……〕，〔一面……一面……〕：

He trembled *as* he spoke.

他且說且打顫。

As she walked she dreamed.

她一面走，一面空想。

As-clause 的省略形式只有 as a child (boy, youth) 這一形式，是 when one is a child (boy, youth) 的意思:

(a) There is the dear old fairy book I had *as a child*. (= ... when I was a child.)

這是我兒童時代的舊童話書。

(b) Poe, *as a youth*, had a rare aptitude for athletic feats.

波埃在年輕時，對於運動技巧有非凡的才能。

7. since

(a) How long is it *since* I saw you last?

自從前次和你相見以來已多久了？

(b) *Since* you were at Oulton, my wife has been growing worse in health.

自你到奧爾登以來，我妻子的身體是一天比一天壞了。

表示“時間”的 *since* 的用法如下:

〔副詞〕

The tree has *since* been cut down.

那樹後來被人砍掉了。

〔介詞〕

I haven't seen her *since* this morning.

今天早晨以來我不會碰到過她。

〔連詞〕

I have known her *since* I was a boy.

我從小就認識她了。

與 *since*-clause 連用的主句的時態，一般用現在完成時，但也有以 *It is ...* 開始的。

(a) *More than thirteen years have gone by since* war ended.

自戰爭結束以來，十三年以上已過去了。

(b) *It is* five years, Tom, *since* we saw you last.

自從我們前次和你會面後，湯姆，已經過去五年了。

Since 前有加 *ever* 的，例如：

Ever since, as a child, I read *Gulliver's Travels* I have longed for adventure in distant parts.

自從兒童時代讀了《格里佛遊記》以來，我就憧憬於遠方的探險旅行。

8. *now that*

Now that the dispute is over, we can go back to work.

現在爭執既已結束，我們便可照常工作了。

由 *now that* 構成的從句，在語法上是作為表示“時間”的從句的，有“*since* (或 *as*) + *now*”的意思。所以它既表示“時間”，同時也表示“理由”。但也有將 *that* 省略，只用 *now* 引出從句來的。

(a) *Now that* we are alone, I will impart to thee the reason of my going.

現在旁人都走了，我要告訴你我出走的理由。

(b) The idea of Marner's money kept growing in vividness, *now*

the want of it had become immediate.

現在因為迫切需要錢用，所以打馬南這筆錢的主意就越來越強烈了。

9. directly; immediately

(a) *Directly* I heard the news, I hastened to the spot.

我一聽到消息，就趕到出事地點去。

(b) *Immediately* the button is pressed the mine explodes.

一按電鈕，水雷就立刻爆炸。

Directly 和 *immediately* 一般作副詞用，但在這裏是作連詞用，語氣比 *as soon as* 強些，概用於書面語。

[副詞]

“I’ll come *directly*,” said he.

他說：“我馬上就來。”

[連詞]

I’ll go there *directly* (= as soon as) I have finished my breakfast.

一吃完早飯，我就到那裏去。

10. the moment, the instant, etc.

(a) *The moment* he comes let me know. (= As soon as he comes,...)

他一到，請立即通知我。

(b) *The instant* the sun rises, all the stars vanish into air.

太陽一出來，所有的星星都立刻不見了。

更強烈地表現 *as soon as* 的意思的，有 *the moment* (that),

the instant (that) 和 the minute (that) 所引導的從句。像 now that 一樣，that 是往往被省略的。

(a) I always forgive everyone *the moment* they tell me the truth of their own accord.

不論何人，當他們自動地把事實真相告訴我時，我總是立刻寬恕他們的。

(b) *The minute* I reached the platform, the train started.

我一到月台，火車就開了。

[比較]

I bought my coat *the year that* I was in Europe.

我的上衣是我旅居歐洲的那一年買的。

11. once (= when once)

Once the dispute is over, we can go back to work.

爭執一旦結束，我們就可照常工作。

Once 作為 if once 的省略形式而引導從句或短語的情形，已在“條件(Condition)”項中敘述過了。而這裏敘述的 once, 是 when once 的省略形式，它是表示“時間”的。

(a) *Once* you begin you must continue.

一旦開始，就必須繼續下去。

(b) I would have given the world to take back what I had said; but a word *once* spoken, who can recapture it?

倘若能把自己說過的話收回，我願犧牲所有一切；但一旦將話說出了，誰能把它收回呢？

Once 的意義與用法，跟它的原形 when once 對照起來，就會更加明白：

You know a conjuror gets no credit *when once* he has ex-

plained his trick.

魔術師一旦將他的手法拆穿，就不希奇了。

Once-clause 常有省略的地方。例如：

(a) *Once* [it is] seen, the picture can never be forgotten.

那張畫看過後是永遠忘記不了的。

(b) *Once* free from debt, his best course is to emigrate.

一旦償清了債務，他最好的辦法是移居國外。

12. as long as; so long as

(a) = while

As long as he is silent, he is not offensive.

只要他不開口，就不會得罪人。

(b) = provided

As long as you apologize I am satisfied.

你如道歉，我就滿意。

But what did that matter *as long as* I was really true?

但只要我確實是真誠的，那又有什麼要緊呢？

So long as 的語氣比 *as long as* 強。例如：

(a) *So long as* the poor Baroness lived I did not feel that I had the right to come between you.

可憐的男爵夫人未死之前，我覺得我沒有權利和你親近。

(b) How late you are! Well, never mind, *so long as* you are come.

你來得多晚呀！好啦，別管了，只要你來了就好了。

13. as soon as

The next morning, *as soon as* it was light, they started home.

第二天早晨天剛亮，他們就動身回家。

(a) A telegram is sent out *as soon as* the telegraph office receives it.

電報局一收到電報稿就發出去。

(b) *As soon as* he finishes his task, let me know.

他的工作一完成，馬上告訴我。

跟別的狀語從句一樣，如果主句的動詞的時態是將來時，則 *as soon as* 所引導的從句的動詞須用現在時或現在完成時（不用將來時或將來完成時）。例如：

(a) I shall come *as soon as* I receive your letter.

我一收到你的信就來。

(b) He will take part in the publishing house *as soon as* he has finished his college course.

他一經大學畢業，即將參加這個出版社的工作。

現在把與 *as soon as* 同義，而表現更爲有力的類似詞組列舉如下，這些詞組多少帶點誇張性，多用於書面語。

no sooner ...than

(a) I had *no sooner* done it *than* I regretted it. (= *As soon as* I had done it I regretted it.)

我做了那事立刻感到後悔。

(b) You *no sooner* come, Mr. Weller, *than* you go again.

威勒先生，你一來就又走了。

scarcely (hardly)...when

(a) I had *scarcely* stepped out of the house *when* I heard a shot within. (= *No sooner* had I stepped out of the house than I...)

我剛踏出家門，就聽到家裏一聲槍響。

(b) *Hardly* had the sound of footsteps died away *when* a man returned round the corner of the house from the direction the pursuers had taken.

腳步聲才消失，一個男子就從追趕者走的方向繞過屋角回來了。

scarcely (hardly)...before

(a) I cannot drink —— for *scarcely* have I drunk, *before* I become irresistibly drowsy.

我不會喝酒，因為我一喝酒，就禁不住昏昏欲睡。

(b) The sounds of the alarm were *hardly* uttered, *before* two hundred men were afoot.

警報聲剛發出，二百個人就動起來了。

as soon as 的特殊用法

(1) 表示能力:

He could *as soon* write an epic *as* drive a car.*

他要是能開汽車，那末就會寫敘事詩了。

(2) 表示選擇，〔不願……寧可……〕的意思:

He would *as soon* cut his throat *as* disoblige a lady.

他寧可砍頭也不肯冒犯一個婦女。

14. as often as (=whenever)

I shall come *as often as* I can.

要是能夠來時，我總會來的。

(a) *As often as* he came, he stayed with us.

他每次來總住在我家裏。

*此句是以“決不會寫敘事詩”來強調不會駕駛汽車。

(b) Smith began a bank account; Brown went to dances *as often as* he could afford the money.

斯密斯開始在銀行存款；而勃朗則有錢就去舞場跳舞。

15. whenever, whensoever

He had a habit of falling asleep *whenever* he sat down.

他有一坐下就要睡覺的習慣。

Whenever (whensoever) 是 no matter when, every time (that), any time (that) 的意思。

比較 { You may go *whenever* (=any time) you like.

你喜歡去時就去。

I will lend you the book *any time* you like.

你隨時要那本書，我都可以借給你。

比較 { *Whenever* (=Every time) I feel any doubt, I inquire.

我有疑惑必問。

比較 { *Every time* I breathe I take some of the oxygen out of the air.

每次呼吸，我從空氣中吸入若干氧氣。

16. every time

(a) You grow younger *every time* I see you.

我每次見到你，你都顯得越年輕了。

(b) We started *every time* a fish leaped.

魚每一跳躍，都使我們吃驚。

Every time I breathe 是 *every time that* I breathe 的省略形式。

[比較]

I met him *the week (or the day) that* I was in Chicago.

我在芝加哥的那一周（那一天）碰見了他。

和 every time 相似的詞組有 each time 和 any time:

(a)*Each time* he comes, he has something new to say.

他每次來總講些新鮮事。

(b)I will lend you the book *any time* you like.

你若隨時要那本書，我都可以借給你。

[比較]

I shall be glad to see you *at any time*.

不論什麼時候看到你，我總是高興的。

17. by the time (that)

It was a bright frosty day, and *by the time* Mrs. Hackit arrived at the vicarage, the sun was near its setting.

那是一個晴朗有霜的日子，哈基特夫人到牧師住宅時，太陽已快西下了。

許多關聯詞都可以兼作連詞或介詞之用，形式是相同的。但 *by* 只能作介詞用；連詞系用 *by the time (that)* 的形式。

[介詞]

(a)Get up *by* sunrise.

請在日出前起身。

(b)Tea will be ready *by* now (=by this time).

此刻茶已預備好了吧。

[連詞]

(a)*By the time* we reached the encampment it was quite dark.

我們到營地時，天已完全黑了。

- (b) Breakfast will be ready *by the time* you have dressed.
當你穿好衣服時，早餐當已預備好了。

18. ere (= before)

- (a) Come *ere* [it is] too late.
請不要來得太遲。
- (b) I would die *ere* I would consent.
我寧死不願答應。

Ere 是 before 的古體，它的意義與用法，跟 before 完全相同。
像 *ere long* (= before long) 這個慣用語是極常用的。

- (a) There is one promise [that] I wish you to make *ere* (= before) I die.
在我未死以前，我要你應允一件事情。
- (b) There is a month yet and I promise you to be back *ere* it shall have elapsed.
還有一個月，不出這個月我一定回來。

表示時間的短語：

表示“時間”的短語，可以看作是從句的省略形式。它的種類很多，以下分項記述。

19. 獨立分詞結構

- (a) *Two days having elapsed*, we again set forward. (= When two days had elapsed, we...)
過了兩天，我們又向前進發。
- (b) *This done* (= When this was done), he left the room.
他做完了這件事，就離開房間走了。

像上例所示，當分詞帶有獨自的主語（跟主句的主語不同）而作狀語短語用時，是可以改成表示“時間”的從句的。

(a) *The party having all entered*, Muzzle carefully closed the door. (= When (After) the party had all entered,...)

一行人都進了門以後，馬茲爾小心地把門關上。

(b) *This [having been] disposed of*, I turned at once to something else. (= When this had been disposed of, I...)

這樁事情了結後，我立即轉做別的事情。

獨立分詞短語可以表示“時間”，也可以表示“理由”。二者的區別，在於前者可用 when-clause 代替，後者可以用 since-clause 代替。

[理由]

It being now pretty late, we took our candles and went upstairs. (= Since it was now pretty late,...)

那時時間已晚，我們拿了蠟燭上樓去了。

[時間]

The sun having set (= When the sun had set), we all went home.

太陽西沉，我們都回家了。

獨立分詞短語的省略形式：

(a) *This [being] done*, Mr. Henry returned.

這事完畢後，亨利先生回去了。

(b) *Supper [being] over*, we sat round the fireplace.

晚餐後，我們圍爐而坐。

20. 分詞短語

(a) *The doctor, having felt his pulse*, pronounced him better.

(= The doctor, after he had felt his pulse, pronounced...)

醫生按了脈搏之後，斷定他病已好轉。

(b) *Walking on the ice*, he slipped. (=While he was walking...)

他在冰上行走時滑了一跤。

(c) *Seated again at the inn*, he told the whole affair once more. (=When he was seated at the inn, he...)

他在小旅館坐下時，又把這件事原原本本地講了一遍。

又如：

(a) Caesar, *having* (=after he had) *defeated the Gauls*, led his army into Britain.

凱撒擊敗了高盧人以後，進軍英國。

(b) *Having reached* (=After she had reached) *the classroom*, she became the object of many questions.

她到了教室以後，大家向她提了許多問題。

21. when-clause 的省略形式

(a) *When angry*, count ten before you speak. (= When you are angry,...)

當發怒時，在說話前數十個數目。(=三思而言。)

(b) I used to resort to the hill *when tired of studying*. (= When I was tired of ...)

讀書厭倦了時，我常到小山上去。

When-clause 的主語倘若跟主句的主語相同，就將主語和動詞 be 略去，成爲時間短語：

When speaking French, Jack often makes mistakes.

傑克講法語時，往往講錯。

凡是表示“時間”的關聯詞，幾乎都有這種省略形式，而 *when* 尤其如此。

(1)以過去分詞爲主體者：

Flowers, *when* [they are] *gathered*, die.

花兒一經採摘就凋謝了。

(2)以現在分詞爲主體者：

Remember to look right *when* [you are] *crossing* a street.

橫穿街道時別忘了向兩邊看。

(3)以形容詞爲主體者：

Altogether, *when* [it was] full, this huge building held no fewer than 87,000 spectators!

全部坐滿時，這大建築物可容納不亞於八萬七千個觀眾。

(4)以副詞爲主體者：

Men, *even when* [they are] *alone*, lighten their life by songs.

人甚至在孤獨無伴時，也可借唱歌使生活輕快。

(5)以名詞爲主體者：

When [he was] *a young man*, he went to live in Western Pennsylvania.

他年輕時，曾去賓夕法尼亞西部居住。

(6)以介詞短語爲主體者：

We were careful not to let the convicts get our knives from us *when* [we were] *on shore*.

我們上陸時，謹防囚犯奪取我們的刀。

上面所舉的例句，都是省略了主語和動詞 *be* 的形式；自然只限於從句(*when*-clause)的主語跟主句的主語相同的時候。但也有少數例外，試看下例：

(a) Ask me *when* [it is] *necessary*.

有必要時來問我。

(b) You may go home *when* [it is] *necessary*.

必要時你可回家。

22. 介詞+動名詞

(a) I must write my exercise *before going* to school.

上學前我必須做好習題。

(b) Come down by the next train *on receiving* this [telegram].

接到這個電報後，即搭下班火車來。

(c) *Since finishing* these studies he has not taken up a new line of work.

自做完這些研究以來，他未曾着手新的工作。

Gerund 之前加介詞 *on* 或 *upon*，多少含有 *as soon as* 的意味：

(a) One felt merry immediately *on entering* the hall. (= ...as soon as one entered the hall.)

人們一走進客廳就感到愉快。

(b) She had laid her little bag of documents *upon* the table, *on coming in*. (= as soon as she came in.)

她一進門就把那文件袋放在桌上。

用 “*on*(*upon*) + 名詞 (my entrance, arrival 等)” 的詞組來代替 “*on* + 動名詞 (*entering*, *arriving* 等)” 是常有的事。這種形式多用來表示時間的短促，動詞成分 (*verbal element*) 幾乎完全不必要了。

(a) *On her return home* (= *On returning home*), Mrs. Jardine wrote a letter to Jobson.

賈丁夫人一回家，就寫信給喬布森。

(b) *On his arrival in Peking* (= *On arriving in Peking*) he went to see his uncle.

他一到北京，就去看他的舅父。

(c) *Upon the receipt of the message* (= On receiving the message), I sent for three of my friends.

一接到信息，我就派人去請我的三個朋友。

23. 介詞短語

這裏說的表示“時間”狀語的介詞短語，多少是帶點慣用語性質的。至於像 *until morning*, *in the evening* 等淺易的短語一概從略。

at a time (同時)

You should never try to learn more than one thing *at a time*.

你切勿同時學習一件以上的東西。

at one time (一度，曾經)

He was *at one time* a baseball player.

他曾一度為棒球選手。

at the time (那時)

I was in Brazil *at the time*.

那時我在巴西。

at all times (時時，經常)

We should *at all times* carry out education among our children to be the honest.

我們應該經常在我們的孩子們中進行教育，要做誠實的人。

at times (往往，有時)

The heat *at times* is intense.

熱度往往很高。

by this (that) time/by this (到此時)

(a) She will be waiting for you again *by this time*.

到了此刻她又在等你了吧。

(b) But he ought to have got us a cab *by this*.

但他到此時應當給我們僱到一輛馬車了吧。

in time (趕上時刻)

Shall we reach the station *in time* for the Shanghai train?

我們到車站時趕得上去上海的火車嗎?

on time (守時, 準時)

You are never *on time* for an appointment.

你從未遵守約會的時間。

in due time; in due course (of time) (終至, 到適當時候)

(a) *In due time* the opportunity came.

機會終於來了。

(b) He acquired great fame by his pictures *in due course of time*.

他後來由繪畫獲得了盛名。

from time to time (時時)

Corona remained seated by the fireplace, glancing at her *from time to time*.

克洛娜依舊坐在爐邊, 時時看一看她。

by day (night) (在白天, 夜晚)

(a) Papa wanted to come, but he is working now *by day* and he can't.

爸爸原想來, 但此刻白天他正在工作, 所以不能來了。

(b) He studied the foreign language and made translations *by night*.

他晚上學習外國語並從事翻譯。

towards the end of (到……末)

In Egypt, heavy rains fall among the mountains *towards the end of summer*.

埃及到夏季末期, 山區要下大雨。

at length (終於, 到底)

At length the Saturday evening arrived

這個星期六晚上終於到了。

in years gone by (往年)

But there is much less ceremony than *in years gone by*.

但儀式比往年少得多了。

in the long run (在長時間, 終於, 結局)

We shall win *in the long run*.

我們終將取得勝利。

to the (a) minute (moment) (準時)

The train arrived *to a moment* (punctually).

火車準時到達。

to this day (至今)

They believe them *to this day*.

他們迄今還相信這些事。

24. 作狀語用的名詞

(a) *One day* he went riding.

有一天他去騎馬。

(b) They waited *months*.

他們等了好幾個月。

以表示“時間”的名詞或名詞短語作為表示“時間”的狀語用的，為數極多。現選擇其比較特別的列舉如下：

(a) Well, it will have to be done *some time*.

喂，這事總有一天非做不可。

(b) You'll get married *some day*, I suppose.

我想你總有一天要結婚的吧。

- (c) You will have to come *one day next week*.
下星期內你必須來。
- (d) *Some time or other* the conditions had to cease.
總有一天那情況非改變不可。
- (e) He thinks of you *all the time* (= all the while).
他時刻都思念着你。
- (f) He has an income of five thousand dollars *a month*.
他每月有五千元的收入。
- (g) See you *Monday week*, I hope.
希望下星期一跟你見面。
- (h) He may come back *any minute*.
他也許隨時都會回來。
- (i) I must tell you *another time*.
他日定當奉告。
- (j) I shall see him *one of these days*.
我不日就將看見他。
- (k) He wore a starched white piqué waistcoat, *summer or winter*.
不論冬夏，他總是穿着上了漿的白棉布背心。
- (l) Of course, it's lovely *this time of year*.
當然，每年此時是宜人季節。
- (m) He had 100 dollars from me just *the other day*.
他日前剛從我這裏拿去一百元。
- (n) (Wait) Just *a moment*, please.
請稍待。
- (o) He went out only *the moment*.
他此刻剛出去。
- (p) *One moment* I am sad, *the next* I am gay.

我忽憂忽喜。

(q) *She rested a short time.*

她休息了片刻。

(r) *Every now and then she would come here.*

她時常到這裏來。

XI . 限制(Restriction)

表示“限制”的語詞，是爲了說明先行或後隨的敘述事項所適用的範圍而附加的。

1. as; as far as

(a) *As boys go, he is polite.*

就孩子們而論，他是有禮貌的。

(b) *As far as I know, he is a good doctor.*

據我所知，他是一位好醫生。

As far as, so far as 都是“to the extent that”的意思，只是 *so far as* 所表示的“限制”的意味比 *as far as* 來得強些。

(a) *As far as I can see, the man has been driven out of his senses by fright.*

就我所知，那人已嚇得不知所措了。

(b) *Whether our reading be great or small, so far as it goes, it should be general.*

無論我們的閱讀是多或是少，只要是讀書就應當廣泛地閱讀。

As far as... is concerned 也是同樣的意思：

As far as the language of the composition is concerned, it

leaves very little to be desired.

就這篇文章的文字而論，那是相當完美的。

又有只用 *as* 來簡潔地表示 *as far as* 的意思的：

(a) He's not a bad boy, *as boys go*.

就孩子們而論，他並不壞。

(b) *As the world goes*, he was a good sort of man enough.

就世間一般人而論，他要算是個好人了。

2. *as regards* (= regarding)

(a) *As regards* that matter, it is all right now.

關於這件事，現在沒有問題了。

(b) *As regards* our plan, it is proceeding satisfactorily.

說到咱們的計劃，倒進展得很順利。

表示“限制”的介詞短語，有下列數種，倘若在這些短語之後加上 *the fact that ...*, 那就得帶從句。

with regard to; *in regard to*; *as regards*.

with reference to; *in reference to*.

with respect to; *in respect to*; *as respects*.

with relation to; *in relation to*; *relative to*.

as to; *as far* (= *as regards*).

(a) *With (In) regard to* our business I will write (to you) later.

關於我們的事，容後函告。

(b) This would hardly be true *with (in) reference to* Europeans.

就歐洲人來說，這幾乎是不正當的。

(c) I have something to say *in (with) respect to* our business.

關於我們的事，我有話要說。

(d) We will learn all that can be learned *in relation to* top sci-

ence.

我們要學習一切可以學到的有關尖端科學的知識。

- (e)The painter is, *as to* the execution of his work, a mechanic; but *as to* his conception and spirit and design, he is hardly below even the poet.

就畫家在拿筆作畫的工作而言，他是匠人；但就他的構思、精神和設計而論，他實在不亞於詩人。

- (f)*As for* me, I was a little puzzled.

至於我本人，我有點迷惑不解。

3. 用 *for* 引導的語句

- (a)*For all we know* (= so far as we know), this young man may turn out a great scientist.

據我們所知，這年輕人可能成爲一個偉大的科學家。

- (b)He may be dead *for aught* (= for anything that) *I know*.

據我所知，他也許已經死了。

這個介詞 *for* 是 *as regards, as far as ... concerns* 的意思。下例中 *for my part, for his age* 的 *for*，就是表示這個意思的。

- (a)*For my part*, I am tired of it.

就我來說，我對它已經厭倦了。

- (b)He is clever *for his age*.

就他的年齡而論，他是聰明的。

That I know (= *for all I know*) 可以表達出“限制”的意思：

- (a)He has never been here, *that I know*. (= He has never been here, so far as I know.)

據我所知，他從沒有到過這裏。

- (b)He took a book sometimes, but never read it *that I know*.

他有時帶着書本，但據我所知，他是從未閱讀的。

4. in that; in so far as

(a) He differs from us *in that* he dislikes most games.

他不愛大多數的體育活動，在這點上，他跟我們不同。

(b) His views must carry some weight *in so far as* they are based on observation.

他的見解是以觀察為基礎的，就從這點來說，也必定會受到相當的重視。

In that 是 in the following fact that 的意思。

The book is unsatisfactory *in that* it lacks a good index.

這本書不能令人滿意，因為缺少一個完善的索引。

茲再舉 in so far as ... is concerned 的例子如下：

In so far as food is concerned, the common idea that beer, whisky and wine have food value is largely an illusion.

就食物而論，一般人認為啤酒、威士忌與葡萄酒有食物價值，這大體說來是一種錯覺。

XII. 伴隨情況(Attendant Circumstances)

所謂“伴隨情況”，係指狀語結構採取了從句或短語的形式，來表示伴隨着主句的活動所發生的情況。例如：

(a) The dog came, *his mouth [being] wide open and his tongue hanging out.*

那狗張大了嘴，垂着舌頭而來。

(b) They talked, *making plans.*

他們一邊談着，一邊擬訂計劃。

1. 獨立分詞結構

(a) We all cut (= ran) upstairs after the doctor, *East leading*.

我們跟着大夫上樓，伊斯脫在前領路。

(b) In India, Ceylon and Java the tea is raised on large estates, *some employing hundreds of hands*.

印度、錫蘭和爪哇在大莊園裏種植茶樹，其中有些莊園是僱傭幾百人的。

在表示“伴隨情況”的獨立語句中，非有主語不可。它採取“主語 + 分詞”的形式來完成副詞的功能。這種獨立結構一概可改成 and... 形式的並列句。

(a) The two still knelt, *tears running* down their cheeks. (= The two still knelt, and tears ran down their cheeks.)

二人仍然跪着，眼淚從面頰上流下來。

(b) Evenings he read aloud, *his wife sewing* by his side.

晚上他高聲朗讀，他妻子在旁邊縫衣。

(c) He looked the doctor in the face, *his eyes filling* with tears.

他望着醫生的面孔，淚水盈眶。

以上所舉的都是現在分詞。此外還有用過去分詞或形容詞等來構成獨立結構的。例如：

(a) John lay down upon the grass, *his hat [being] pulled* over his eyes.

約翰躺在草地上，帽子遮着眼睛。

(b) Next came as many young ladies on foot, *all [of them being] beautiful and richly dressed*.

其次是同樣人數的年輕婦人步行而來，全都美貌而又裝束華

麗。

在獨立結構中有加 with 以更明確地表現“伴隨情況”的特質：

(a) It was a dismal night, *with a thin rain falling*.

那是一個陰暗的夜，下着蒙蒙細雨。

(b) The day had been very mild, *with a gentle breeze sweeping to the northward and westward*.

那天非常暖和，東南風輕輕地吹拂過大地。

2. much less; still less; much more; still more*

But I must not think this, *much less* say it.

但我不該這樣想，更何況說呢？

Much less 和 still less 是在上文的否定陳述的基礎上，再加上另一有力的否定事實；反之，much more 和 still more 是在先行的肯定陳述後，再着力肯定另一事實的。

(a) I could not assent to, *much less* participate in such proceedings.

我對於這種行動不能贊同，更不用說參加了。

(b) Every one has a right to enjoy his liberties, *much more* his life.

每人都有享受自由的權利，更不用說有享受人生樂趣的自由了。

3. 分詞短語或定語短語

表示“伴隨情況”的從句，往往簡約而成爲分詞短語或定語短

*這一項中提到的 much less, much more 等，當代的語法書一般認爲是插入語，不是“伴隨情況”狀語。——校訂者。

語。自然，這時從句的主語和主句的主語是一致的。

(1)現在分詞短語

They talked, making plans.

他們一面談着，一面制訂計劃。

(2)過去分詞短語

Crushed at first by his imprisonment, he had soon found a dull relief in it.

起先他因被判了徒刑而感到萬分懊喪，但過了不久他却在監獄生活中模糊地感到寬慰。

(3)定語短語

They searched, eager for truth.

他們渴望真理而探索。

跟表示“伴隨情況”的現在分詞短語連用的簡單句，是可以改成並列句的。

(a) *We closed the door, sitting (= and sat) on the stairs outside.*

我們關上門，坐在外邊台階上。

(b) *The audience rose to its feet, throwing (= and threw) flowers on the stage.*

觀眾站起身來，向舞台扔花朵。

表示“伴隨情況”的形容詞:

(a) *She sat silent at the corner, angry with him for having broken his promise.*

她在房角裏默然坐着，因他不遵守諾言而生氣。

(b) *Men and women rush into the streets, all eager to hear the news.*

男女們都渴望聽到消息而奔向街頭。

表示“伴隨情況”的過去分詞:

用於這種句式的過去分詞多是像 *determined*, *resolved*, *convinced* 等表示“決心”或“信念”的詞。

I soon felt hungry, and with a light heart I made for the town, *resolved* to spend the two coins I had left on a good breakfast.

我不久覺得餓了，決心把那剩下的兩文錢花掉以好好地吃一頓早飯，於是便抱着輕快的心情向市街走去。

此外，還有由過去分詞構成的若干形式，主要的有 *accompanied* (*attended*) *by*... (被……陪伴着)，*followed by*... (被……跟隨着；繼……而發生)，*preceded* (*headed*) *by*... (由……領先) 等等。

(a) Sir Walter left Abbotsford, *attended by* his daughter Ann and myself.

瓦爾特由他女兒安妮和我陪伴着，離開了阿巴茨福特。

(b) A shepherd passes through the dark street, *followed by* his sheep.

牧羊人經過黑暗的街道，後面跟着羊羣。

(c) They will parade the downtown streets, *headed by* their own military band.

他們將在鬧市遊行，由他們自己的軍樂隊為前導。

4. *without*; *instead of*; *besides* 引導的動名詞

(a) It is one of the beautiful compensations of life that no man can sincerely try to help another, *without helping himself*.

誠心幫助別人必然也幫助了自己，這是人生中的一種美好的報償。

(b) *Besides being pretty*, she is very righteous.

她不僅美貌，而且非常正直。

(c) We must work hard *instead of spending our time idly*.

我們必須辛勤工作，而不可虛度時光。

幾個表示“伴隨情況”的短語*：

Not to say... ; not to mention... ; to say nothing of... ; let alone...*

這些短語都是“……不消說”，“……當然的”，“何況……”的意思。

(a) To go there would mean a certain expense, *to say nothing of* the time.

姑且不說要花費時間，到那裏去還要花一筆費用。

(b) *Not to mention* riches and honour, even food and clothes are not to be come at without the toil of the hand and the sweat of the brow.

要是沒有手的勞作和額上的汗珠，財富和榮譽且不必說，就連衣食也是得不到的。

(c) All great discoverers have at one time or another been regarded as dreamers, *not to say* mad.

一切偉大的發現家總有一段時期被認為是夢想家，甚至瘋人。

(d) There was not bread and butter enough for one, *let alone* three.

連夠一個人吃的麵包和黃油都沒有，更不要說三個人的了。

apart from; independently of (姑且不說……)

Quite *apart from* (or *independently of*) saving a good deal of money in drawing illustrations myself, I derived much pleasure from it.

* 下列幾個短語，現代的語法書一般當作“插入語”處理，這是因為從語法角度看，它們所表示的是講話人的附帶說明，而不是動作的特徵，因此不能說是“狀語”。——校訂者。

我自繪插畫，姑且不說節省了一筆錢，我還由此得到極大的樂趣。

in addition to (除……外)

In addition to John's being blamed for this, he was blamed also for breaking the window.

除這件事歸咎於約翰外，打破窗子也要歸咎於他。

So far from (不……)

So far from the rain doing any good, it did a good deal of harm.

那次雨不但無益，且有大害。

第三章

定語結構

(Attributive Construction)

定語是修飾名詞，並賦與名詞以特徵或屬性的。例如: blue paper, *blue* 就是限定 paper 的顏色的。如果說 thin blue paper, 那末 blue paper 的種類又多受到一層限制了。

定語結構分定語，定語短語，定語從句三種:

(1)定語

- (a) *heavy rain*(大雨); *travelling expenses*(旅費); *polished manners*(文雅的風度)。
- (b) *a morning paper*(晨報); *children's clothes*(童裝)。

(2)定語短語

- (a)*The ambition to become rich is not a lofty one.*
想發財的志向是不高尚的。
- (b)*A friend in need is a friend indeed.*
患難之交才是真正的朋友。

(3)定語從句

- (a)*This is the sailor who saved my life.*
這就是救我性命的那位船員。
- (b)*There may come a time when it will be necessary for you to see him.*
你必須同他會面的時候也許會到來。

由上所述，不論構成的樣式或長短如何，只要是修飾名詞或代詞的，都可包括在定語結構之內。現分別討論於下。

I . 定語(Attributes)

1. 定語的後置

定語在英語中，通常放在名詞的前面（如tall buildings, next morning 等）但也有些定語放在名詞的後面。例如: Richard the Second (= the Second Richard), Alfred the Great (= the Great Alfred), the sum total (= the total sum), Secretary General (= the general secretary),等等。凡修飾 something, anything, nothing 等名詞的定語，一概放在這些名詞之後，如: something nice, anything beautiful, nothing bad。此外，又有爲了增強語氣或由於修辭上或用法上的便利，而將定語放在名詞後面的。

(a) I have done nothing wrong.

我未曾做過壞事。

(b) I start for Italy on Monday *next*.

我將於下星期一動身到意大利去。

如果有兩個以上的定語，則因語調關係，有的放在名詞之後。

例如:

(a) He was a great soldier, *firm, brave, and cautious*.

他是個堅毅，勇敢而又謹慎的偉大軍人。

(b) Of this extraordinary person I learned many a story, *grave and gay, comic and warlike*.

關於這位非凡的人物，我聽到種種莊嚴、愉快、有趣和英勇的故事。

定語短語的後置或插入:

(a) I know no other one thing *so beautiful, so glorious, so powerful*.

我從未再見過另一件這樣美麗、這樣光輝、這樣豪邁的東西。

(b) To climb the pole, *cold and wet with snow*, was no easy task.

攀登那根因沾着雪而又冷又濕的柱子，不是件容易事。

作定語短語用的表示距離的名詞短語：

(a) Every morning Festa had to fetch water from a well [which was] *a mile from the house*.

佛斯塔每天早上必須到離家一英里的井裏去打水。

(b) We live upon a ball of matter [which is] *eight thousand miles in diameter*.

我們住在一個直徑八千英里的圓形的物體上。

2. 作定語短語用的介詞短語

A man [who is] *in bad health* can seldom be happy.

身體不健康的人難得快樂。

上述各例是作定語用的介詞短語；但也可看作定語從句的省略形式。

(a) The house [which stands] *over the way* was once a famous mansion.

路對面的那座房子，從前是一所著名的大廈。

(b) And the impressions *of six years* are not got over in such a space of time.

六年（積累起來）的印象不能在這樣一段時間內忘掉。

3. 作定語短語用的不定式

The way *to be happy* is to make others happy (= The way of being happy is ...)

幸福之道是使別人幸福。

(a) A house *to let* is difficult to find.

出租的房子不容易找到。

(b) But it was not easy to carry out the resolution *never to approach her*.

但決意永遠不接近她是不容易做到的。

(c) I've got my wife and little boy *to look after*.

我有妻子和小孩要照應。

不定式短語常與連詞連用，構成定語短語。例如：

This is not the place *in which to take* a rest.

這不是休息的地方。

作定語短語用的不定式如果須用主語，則在不定式前附加“for + 名詞/代詞賓格(us, me, you)”等。例如：

(a) Your plan *for me to go* doesn't please me.

你叫我去的計劃使我很不愉快。

(b) Partners *for us to dance with* were plentiful.

我們的舞伴極多。

(c) There was really nothing *for him to do* but what he had done.

他除了已做完這些事外，實在沒有可做的了。

作定語用的不定式，常將介詞放在後面。例如：

(a) Give us something *to look at* [= at which to look].

請給我們一些東西看看吧。

(b) He was certainly not a difficult man *to live with* [= with whom to live].

他確實不是個難以與之共同生活的人。

4. 不定冠詞的倒置

(a) We had *such a* kind reception.

我們受到非常殷勤的招待。

(b) Fifty guilders is sufficient for *so small a service*.

這樣一點小事，五十基爾特(荷蘭銀幣)已足夠了。

加 *such* 於“不定冠詞+形容詞+名詞”的詞組時，*such* 放在冠詞之前，例如：*such a clever boy*。但若加 *so* 或 *too* 時，是取“*so (too)* + 形容詞 + 不定冠詞 + 名詞”的形式，例如：*so strange a beast* (= *a beast so strange*); *too great a praise* (= *a praise too great*)。

(a) This is *too important a* question.

這是個非常重大的問題。

(b) Nor should the examination be of *too specialized a* character.

那種試驗也不應屬於太專門性質的。

II. 分詞短語(Participial Phrases)

1. 在名詞之後

(a) A hunter *carrying* [= who carried] *a gun* passed through the woods.

一個荷槍的獵人穿過樹林。

(b) China stretches across a vast area covering [= which covers] *the cold, temperate and tropical zones*.

中國幅員遼闊，包括寒帶、溫帶和熱帶。

分詞短語放在名詞後面，可以看作定語從句的縮略。

現在分詞

(a) We shall arrive too late to catch the train *leaving* (= which will leave) at eight.

我們會到得太遲，趕不上八點鐘開的火車。

(b) Then I saw that the door *leading* to the west wing [which led to the west wing] was open wide.

那時我看到通往西廂房的門敞開着。

過去分詞

(a) A life [which is] *spent* worthily should be measured by deeds, not years.

一個人的一生，過得有無價值，應當以它的貢獻來衡量，不應當以年齡來衡量。

(b) He has lost the book [which was] *given* him by me.

他把我給他的那本書遺失了。

(c) Drawn up in front was a sofa, [which was] *covered* with red rep.

前面擺着一張沙發，上面鋪着一塊紅色的條花布。

2. 在所修飾的名詞之前

Getting up from the table, Newton went back to his study.

(= Newton, who got up from the table, went back ..., Newton got up from the table and went back ...)

牛頓從食桌邊站起身來，回到他的書房去了。

本項所揭示的分詞定語短語帶有表語定語從句的性質，所以可改成定語從句。

(a) And, *falling* on a bench, he laughed until the tears ran down his cheeks. (= And he, who fell on a bench, laughed

until ...)

他倒在椅子上，一直笑得眼淚都從面頰上流下來。

(b) *Decked* with flowers, the boat drifted downstream. (= The boat, which was decked with flowers, ...)

這隻飾着花朵的小船，順流而下。

3. 作補語用

(a) 現在分詞

I found the old man *mending* his net.

我看到那老人在補網。

(b) 過去分詞

He looked straight up the laboratory and saw all the five girl students *grouped* in their places.

他一直望到實驗室，看見五個女學生聚集在一起。

現在分詞常作 *fine*, *see*, *notice*, *watch*, *discover*, *feel*, *hear* 等表示感覺的動詞的補語用。

(a) Let us stay on the bank and *hear* the lark *singing* up in the air.

讓我們停在河邊，聽雲雀在空中鳴囀吧。

(b) Suddenly I *felt* some one *touching* my elbow.

突然間我覺得有人碰我的肘臂。

(c) Walking alone, John *noticed* the purse *lying* on the ground.

約翰獨自走着，發現了他掉在地上的錢包。

(d) He was *heard calling*.

有人聽見他在呼喚。

過去分詞也有同樣作補語的用法。例如：

(a) I hate to see things *done* by halves. If it be right, do it

boldly; if it be wrong, leave it undone.

我討厭看到做事半途而廢，假使事情是正當的，那就勇敢地做去；假使是不正當的，那就乾脆不要着手。

(b) I have heard it *said* that a curse was like a stone flung up to the heavens, and most likely to return on the head of him that sent it.

我聽到古語說，咀咒好像向天空扔上去的石頭，大都要掉回到扔石頭的人的頭上來。

III. 同位語句 (Appositions)

1. 同位語 (Appositives)

(a) Peking, *the capital of China*, is one of the largest cities in the world.

中國的首都北京，是世界最大的城市之一。

(b) Tom gave his friend *John* a book.

湯姆給了他朋友約翰一本書。

同位語是修飾或說明與它發生同位關係的名詞的：

(a) He lives with Andrews *the blacksmith*.

他和鐵匠安德魯斯住在一起。

(b) Columbus was born in Genoa, *a prosperous seaport town of northwestern Italy*.

哥倫布生於意大利西北部繁華的海港熱那亞。

(c) Dr. Winchcliffe, *my predecessor*, was a classmate of my father's.

我的前任溫奇克利夫博士，是我父親的同班同學。

以上是先行名詞的同位語。茲再舉與上文發生同位關係的名詞或名詞短語的例子如下：

(a) He always laughed loud and long at his own jokes, *a habit that won him no admirers.*

他老是對自己的笑話發出又長又響的笑聲，這個習慣使別人感到討厭。

(b) He has grown to love labour —— *a good example for his brother.*

他變得熱愛勞動了，這給他兄弟做出了一個好榜樣。

2. or

The thermometer stood at 32 degrees Fahrenheit, *or freezing point.*

寒暑表指着華氏三十二度，即冰點。

本項所說的連詞 or 不是“或者”的意思，而是 that is（就是）的意思，引導那說明同一事物的詞。例如：violin or fiddle, violin 和 fiddle 是並列同義語，用 or 所引導的同位語 fiddle 來解說先行詞 violin 的。

(a) The course is elective *or* optional.

這門課程是選修科，即隨意選讀的課程。

(b) I passed some time in Poet's Corner, which occupied an end of one of the transepts, *or* cross aisles, of the Abbey.

我在“詩人牧場區”逗留了一會兒，“詩人牧場區”位於大教堂十字走廊，也就是十字堂的一端上。

3. namely; viz.; that is; i.e.; for example; e.g.*

(a) There were only two girls there, *namely*, Mary and Ann.

那邊只有兩位姑娘，就是瑪麗和安。

(b) Three boys, *i.e.*, Tom, Will and Fred.

三個少年，即湯姆，維爾和弗萊特。

(c) Certain trees; *e.g.*, the oak and ash.

某種樹木，例如橡樹和槲櫟。

e.g., for example:

e.g. 是拉丁文 *exempli gratia* (= for example) 的縮寫，是用來引導說明性語句的。普通讀作 *for example*，也有用 *for instance* 的。

(a) We designate odors by the objects from which they come; *e.g.*, violet, orange, etc.

我們用散發香氣之物來稱香氣之名，諸如紫羅蘭、桔等。

(b) Everybody has his merits. Take that boy, *for instance*, he is most conscientious and hard-working.

各人有各人的優點；拿這個孩子來說，他很認真負責，很勤勞肯幹。

i.e., that is (to say):

That is 也是用來引導說明語句的。*i.e.* 出於拉丁文的 *id est*，普通讀作 *that is*; *in other words*（換句話說）也是屬於這一類的短語。

(a) My wife suggested my going alone, *i.e.*, with you and without her.

*這些語句在句中起插入語的作用，用來導引後隨的同位語，但它們本身不是‘同位語’。——校訂者

我妻提議我一人去；即不同她去，而同你去。

- (b) Between Weimar and Paris he spent some portion of his earlier years, while his family —— his mother, *that is*, and his stepfather —— were living in Devonshire.

他早年有一個時期住在魏瑪和巴黎，那時他家裏的人，即他媽媽和他的繼父住在德文郡。

- (c) Kepler guessed, *that is to say*, imagined.

蓋普拉推測，就是說，他憑想像力來猜想。

viz., namely:

Namely 也是用來引導說明性語句的，等於 *that is to say*。viz. 是拉丁文 *videlicet* 之略，與 *namely* 同義，普通讀作 *namely*。

- (a) Who is to fine this money? —— Those who receive the benefit, *viz.*, the people.

誰來出這筆錢呢？——那些受益的人，即人民。

- (b) He confined his practice almost entirely to one class of work, the defence, *namely*, of culprits arraigned for heavy crimes.

他的（律師）事務幾乎完全局限於一種性質的工作，那就是，替被控告犯了重罪的犯人作法律辯護。

又有將 *namely* 或 *that is (to say)* 省略了，使兩個同位關係的語句作更密切的對置的。例如：

- (a) It is true, all things have two faces, *a light one and a dark [one]*.

的確，一切事物總有兩方面：光明的一面與黑暗的一面。

- (b) To think that Johnnie — *my best friend* — should have acted so meanly.

想不到我的知己約翰竟會做出這種卑鄙事來。

4. as; such as*

I require books of reference, *such as* a grammar, a dictionary, etc.

我需要像語法書、辭典等參考書。

語調比 *for example* 或 *for instance* 婉轉而意義相同的，是 *such as* 或 *as*。

(a) Some animals, *as* (= *for example*) the fox and the squirrel, have bushy tails.

有些動物，像狐狸和松鼠，是拖着毛茸茸的尾巴的。

(b) We are fond of sports and open-air pastimes, *such as* cricket, football, rowing and skating.

我們喜歡像板球、足球、划船、溜冰這類運動與戶外消遣。

(c) Experienced travellers put the ticket in some conspicuous place *such as* the band of the hat.

有經驗的旅客把車船票放在一個顯眼的地方，例如插在帽帶上。

又有用破折號 (dash) 來引出同位語的：

Our business is to make little wooden toys — bears, cattle and the like — for children.

我們的業務是製造木製兒童小玩具，如熊、牛，等等。

5. 同位語從句 (Appositional Clauses)

His exertions had this effect, *that the vote was unanimous*.

他的努力產生了這樣的效果，就是，全場一致投票選舉他。

**Such as* 和 *as* 也是導引後隨同位語的插入語。——校訂者

Michael Gold is right in *his opinion that there can be no freedom in the world when men must beg for jobs.*

邁克爾·戈爾德的見解——如果人們必須求職時，世界上便不會有自由——是不錯的。

帶疑問詞 what, who, which, when, how, where 等的名詞從句，也有作同位語從句用的。例如：

The question, *which was better*, troubled us.

哪個較好這個問題，使我們很傷腦筋。

IV. 定語從句(Attributive Clauses)

定語從句的作用和由單詞構成的定語一樣，但它是用關係代詞(who, which, that 等)或關係副詞(when, where, how 等)構成從句的。例如：

(a) Pavlov is a scientist *whose fame is world-wide.* (= Pavlov is a world-famous scientist.)

巴甫洛夫是位舉世聞名的科學家。

(b) He has a story-book *which is very interesting.* (= He has a very interesting story-book.)

他有一本非常有趣的故事書。

關係代詞(who, which, that 等)有“限定”和“連續”兩種用法：前者用來構成主句中某一成分的定語；後者却用來附加別的事實，因而 who 是 and he (she), which 是 and it 的意思。

限定

Any one *who tries to reap profits at the expense of others* will come to a bad end.

凡有損人利己之心的人，其結果都不妙。

連續

I met the boat man, *who* (= and he) *then took me across the ferry.*

我遇見了船夫，他把我從渡口渡到對岸。

1. *who, which, that, etc.*

(a) Men *who have done great things*, made stepping stones of their failures.

完成大事業的人，是吸取過去失敗教訓的。

(b) Good health is one of the greatest blessings *that* (= which) *we can enjoy.*

健康是我們所能享受的最大的幸福之一。

引導定語從句的關係代詞有兩種：(1)用於人：*who, whom, whose; that*;(2)用於事物：*which; that*。

而 *that* 這個詞不論人或事物都能通用，可以代替 *who, whom* 或 *which*。

(a) No one *who has never wanted food* knows what life is.

從未挨過餓的人，不會懂得生活是什麼。

(b) Lomonosov was a great scholar *whose whole life was devoted to the study and enlightenment of Russian science, philosophy as well as literature.*

羅蒙諾索夫是一位大學者，他的一生都貢獻於研究和促進俄國科學、哲學和文學的事業。

(c) He used to tell his story to every stranger *that* (= who) *arrived at Mr. Dolittle's hotel.*

他常把自己的身世講給每個到杜列特爾先生的客棧來的客人聽。

(d) You are the finest human being *that* (= whom) *I know*.

你是我認識的人中最好的人。

(e) All *that could be done* had been done.

一切可做的事都做了。

Whom 與 which 常和介詞連用。如 of whom (to speak), to whom (to talk), with whom (to dine), 等等。動詞是不及物動詞時，介詞是不能省略的。

(a) I have no one *to whom* I can talk upon such matters.

關於這種事情，我沒有一個可以商量的人。

(b) Those photographs *at which* you've been looking were taken during our holidays.

你正看的那些照片是我們在假期拍的。

Whom, which 前面的介詞，也有放在後面的。例如：

(a) Men *whom* one can depend on absolutely, are rare.

能夠絕對信任的人是難得的。

(b) This is the fountain pen *which* I write *with*.

這是我寫字用的自來水筆。

用 *that* 代替 *which* 或 *whom* 時，介詞 of, with, in 等必定放在定語從句的末尾，而不放在 *that* 之前。例如：

(a) The cab *that* (= *which*) *we came in* ran over a dog.

我們所乘的二輪馬車軋死了一隻狗。

(b) There are hundreds of people here, *that* (= *whom*) *I must positively introduce you to*.

這裏有幾百個人，我必須向他們介紹你。

2. 關係代詞的省略

(a) The man [whom] *I met* was a carpenter.

我碰見的那個人是木匠。

(b) This is the house [which] *Madame Sun Yat-sen once lived in.*

這就是孫中山夫人曾經住過的房子。

當關係代詞 *that, which* 或 *whom* 的先行詞是它們引起的定語從句中的動詞或介詞的賓語時，*that, which* 或 *whom* 往往省略。

(a) You have learned to sing well the song [that] *I taught you.*

你已學會我所教你的歌，而且唱得很好了。

(b) A letter shows the man [whom] *it is written to* as well as the man [whom] *it is written by.*

書信表現出寫信人與收信人的為人。

3. 先行詞的省略

(a) *Who leaves all, receives more.*

捨棄一切的人，所得更多。

(b) *Whoever comes will be welcome.*

無論誰來，都是歡迎的。

引導定語從句的關係代詞的先行詞有時省略，尤其是當先行詞是不定人稱代詞的時候。

(a) *Who (= He who) steals my purse, steals trash.*

偷我錢包的人，偷了一件廢物。

(b) *Who bravely dares must sometimes risk a fall. (= He (anyone) who bravely dares ...)*

勇於冒險的人，有時要冒失敗的危險。

即 *who, whom, whoever* 是 *he that, those that* 或 *any person that* 的意思，是泛指一般人時用的。不過近來有用 “*he who (that)*” 或 “*those who (that)*” 的傾向。

(a) *He who* likes music likes to attend a concert.

喜歡音樂的人喜歡出席音樂會。

(b) We become like *those whom* we habitually admire.

我們成爲自己慣常所讚揚的那種人了。

4. when, before, etc.

(a) This is the month *when* (= in which) cherries ripen.

現在是櫻桃成熟的月份了。

(b) I wrote to you last on the night *that* (= when) I reached here.

我前次寫信給你，是在我到達此間的當天晚上。

修飾“時間”的定語從句，一般是以 when, while, before, after 等關係副詞開始的。

(a) And he is now come to that stage of life *when a man like him should enter into public affairs.*

按他的年齡，他已經到了該從事公務活動的時候了。

(b) We can already count the days *when China will attain prosperity.*

中國的興盛是可以計日程功的。

(c) He arrived the day *after the letter was posted.*

他在信件附郵的第二天到達。

(d) The day *before you came* was rainy.

你來的前一天是雨天。

That 常可以用來代替 when。例如：

The next time *that* (= when) business carried him to Edinburgh, Scott invited him to dinner.

第二次他因事到愛丁堡時，斯科特曾請他吃飯。

代替 when 的 that, 有時可以省略:

The seeds of our punishment are sown the same time [that] *we commit the sin.*

刑罰的種子是和犯罪同時播下的。

5. where, whence, why

(a) A desert is a great plain *where* (= in which) nothing will grow.

沙漠是寸草不生的一片大平原。

(b) Sam looked round in the direction *whence* (= from which, where) the voice proceeded.

薩姆向聲音傳來的方向環顧。

修飾“地點”的定語從句是用 where, whence 等關係副詞引導的。

(a) I will show you a store *where* (= at which) you may buy all you need.

我要告訴你一家可以買到你所需要的全部東西的商店。

(b) Teas are classed according to the province *whence* (= from which, from where) they come.

茶葉是依產地分類的。

除限定用法之外, where 還有作為非限定用法的, 例如:

(a) In Sylhet, *where* (= in which) the town is flooded, many of the inhabitants are living in trees.

西黑特地區的市鎮漲了大水, 許多居民住在樹上。

(b) There, *where* (= in which) it is too cold for man to live in comfort, are the caribou.

在那裏 (指北冰洋地方) 因氣候過冷, 人類不宜居住, 但有

馴鹿。

再舉以表示“理由”的關係副詞 *why* 開始的定語從句的例子如下：

(a) I will tell you the reason *why* I did so.

我要把所以這樣做的理由告訴你。

(b) That is the very reason *why* this story was written.

這就是寫這本小說的原因。

(c) The reason *why* he cannot succeed is evident.

他不能成功的原因是顯而易見的。

6. *wherein, whereby, etc.*

Calamity is the perfect glass *wherein* (= in which) we truly see and know ourselves.

災難是我們真實照見自己的一面很好的鏡子。

關係副詞 *wherein* (= in which), *whereon* (= on which), *whereby* (= by which), *whereof* (= of which) 等，大都用於古文體。

For the first time in her life she beheld the spot *whereof* her father had spoken.

她生平第一次看到了她父親講過的那個地方。

7. *such as; as*

Suddenly his whole face smiled *such* a smile *as* I had not seen for a long time.

突然他滿面露出我久未見過的微笑來了。

關係代詞 *as* 是 of the (that) kind/character 的意思，與 *such* 連

用構成定語從句。

(a) There is no *such* place as you dream of in all this world.

全世界沒有像你所夢想的那樣的地方。

(b) It was *such* a night as one would gladly have spent in the open air, and I was in no hurry to go to bed.

那是一個人們願在戶外消度的夜晚，所以我不急於就寢。

As 常有和短語連用的，有時是從句的省略形式。

(a) I don't care for *such* roses as *this!* (= I don't care for such poor roses as this [rose] is.)

我不愛這種薔薇！

(b) Nowhere in the world is there *such* a place for an idle man as London. (= ... such a good place for ... as London is.)

世界上沒有一個像倫敦那樣適於游手好閒者的地方。

As-clause 的主語若與 *such* 所修飾的那個名詞相同，則可從略。

No one thought that *such* a catastrophe as has occurred would happen. (= ... that kind of catastrophe which has occurred...)

誰也想不到會發生像這次所發生的那樣的災禍。

As-clause 有時跟 *such* 緊緊地連在一起，而沒有名詞夾在中間。

例如：

(a) The library was full of story-books *such* as boys love. (= The library was full of such story-books as boys love.)

圖書館裏堆滿了少年所愛讀的那種故事書。

(b) Associate with *such* as (= those who) will improve your manners.

請和能改善你的舉止的那種人交友。

As 有作為 *such* as 的省略形式而單獨使用的。例如：

(a) The banana, as [is] used by us, is a luxury. In many parts of the world it forms the principal food.

我們所吃的香蕉是珍品；在世界上許多地方，它是主食。

(b) This book is written in easy English *as* can be understood by the beginners.

這本書是用淺易的英文寫的，而且初學者也能夠讀懂。

the same as ...

As-clause 除了 *such as* 之外，還有 *the same as*。

(a) I want *the same* wine *as* I had yesterday.

請給我昨天所飲的那種酒。

(b) This is *the same* watch *as* I have lost.

這隻錶是和我所遺失的那塊一樣的。

(c) He uses *the same* dictionaries *as* you.

他用的字典同你用的是相同的。

8. 作定語用的 *which*

On Sunday morning we left by motor-car for Summer Palace, *which place* (= and that place) was reached about 9 o'clock.

星期天早晨我們乘汽車去頤和園，九點鐘左右到達那個地方。

關係代詞“*which*”有時用作定語，來代表先行名詞的。

We traveled together as far as Paris, *at which place* (= where) we parted company.

我們一同旅行到巴黎，在那裏我們分手了。

9. *but* (= that ... not)

There is no one *but* knows that. (= There is no one who does not know that.)

那樁事人人皆知。

關係代詞 *but* 是 *that* (*who, which*) *is* (*does*) *not* 的意思。它的構成上的特徵是主句 (*but* 前的文句) 中含有 *no, not, nothing, none* 等否定語。

(a) There was *not* a man present *but* agreed with me. (= There was not a man present who did not agree)

出席的人沒有一個不同意我。

(b) There is *nothing* born *but* has to die. (= There is nothing born which has not to die.)

沒有一種生物是生而不死的 (有生必有死)。

(c) There is *not* a woman in all the world *but* would (= who would not) prefer death to such a nuptial.

世上所有的女人都寧願死而不如此結婚。

第四章

並列結構

(Co-ordinations)

我們在狀語結構和定語結構中敘述的句式，除簡單句(Simple Sentence)外，幾乎都是由主句和從句構成的主從複合句(Complex Sentence)。在主從複合句中，從句(以when, if, though等從屬連詞開始的從句和that-clause)本身是不能獨立的，它是從屬於主句的，其作用在於限制主句；因此，主從複合句所含有的兩個子句具有非並列的關係。本章所述的並列句(Compound Sentences)是以and, but等來連接並列子句的。換句話說，就是用連詞將各自獨立的具有同地位的子句連結成一個句子。這種連詞，叫做並列連詞(co-ordinate conjunction)。

這種被連接在一起的子句的相互關係，大體有類似、連續、對比、選擇、因果關係，等等。

I . 特殊並列連詞(Special Co-ordinate Conjunctions)

在這裏所學的並列連詞中，與其稱為連詞，不如稱為修飾全句的副詞。連詞以放在句首為原則，但only, also, too, likewise, moreover等詞多放在句尾或句子中間；雖偶爾有放在句首的，但嚴格說來，那是修飾全句的副詞。下面所列舉的，是這種連詞中具有特殊用法的。

1. again (= besides, moreover)

Charles is usually cheerful; sometimes, *again*, he is despondent.

查理士平時是快活的，有時却又鬱鬱不樂。

Again, we must learn from the people.

再者，我們必須向人民學習。

2. also (= in addition, as well, besides)

Take this, and my very best thanks *also*.

請收此物，並接受我最深的謝意。

Also 是副詞，又是連詞。作連詞可單獨使用，也可與 *and* 或 *but* 連用。

We must care for the teachers *and also* for the pupils.

我們必須關懷教師，也關懷學生。

3. even

John dislikes me; he *even* told me so.

約翰不喜歡我；他甚至這樣告訴我。

He disputes everything — *even* the facts.

一切事情他都要爭辯，連事實也要爭辯。

4. besides

I had to visit a sick friend of mine; *besides*, I didn't know you would come.

我得去看一位有病的朋友，而且又不知道你要來。

Besides, you have saved my life.

不但如此，你還救了我的性命呀。

[比較]

Kingsley, *besides* being a novelist, was a poet of no mean order.

金斯萊不但是是一位小說家，而且是一位不平凡的詩人。

5. as well; as well as

I'll have some meat *and* some pudding *as well*.

請給我點肉，並給我一些布丁。

As well 大都與 *and* 或 *but* 連用，例如：John *and* Jack *as well*... (約翰與傑克……)；not only John *but* Jack *as well* ... (不但約翰，就是傑克也……)。

又，*and* ... *as well* 也可改成 *as well as* 而意義不變。如 A *as well as* B ... (不但B，即A也……) 那樣用 *as well as* 時，前者(A)較後者(B)更為重要。

These pills are good to prevent diseases, *as well as* to cure when one is sick.

這些丸藥不但生病時可以治病，且能防止疾病發生。

As well as 又有表示“程度”的用法。請參看第二章Ⅶ“程度”一項。

6. both...and

(a) He can *both* sing *and* dance.

他既能唱歌又能跳舞。

(b) The culprit looked *both* angry *and* ashamed.

這罪犯露出既憤怒又羞慚的神色。

both...and可與下面各種詞類連用：

(a) Many, *both* friends *and* strangers, came from a great distance.

許許多多人，相識的和不相識的，從遠方來。

(b) There is, in the appearance of the lion, something *both* noble *and* imposing.

獅子看來是有些一表堂堂的。

(c) We raise many million sheep, *both* for wool *and* mutton.

我們爲了取得羊毛和羊肉，飼養了幾百萬頭羊。

跟 both...and 相似的，有 alike...and。例如：

(a) The book is *alike* (= both) agreeable *and* instructive.

這本書既有趣味，又有教育意義。

(b) That is the virtue necessary *alike* to man *and* to woman.

那是男子和婦女同樣必須具備的品德。

(c) They are much alike in appearance *and* in character.

他們在外貌和性格上都很相像。

at once... and 也是 both...and 的意思：

(a) This news was *at once* (= both) a joy *and* a perplexity.

這消息既使人歡喜，又使人惶惑。

(b) He was *at once* (= both) learned *and* ignorant. He understood all science, and was ignorant of everything in regard to life.

他是個博學之士，但同時又是個無知的人。他精通一切學問，但對生活的一切卻一無所知。

7. what is more* (better, etc.)

He is well educated, and *what is more*, he is very humorous.
他受過良好教育，而且很幽默。

這種句子是作附加的敘述時用的，常和比較級連用。

what is better (worse, etc.)

What is better than that, she was admitted member of the writers' association.

更好的事是她已被接收為作家協會會員。

8. not only...but (also)

(a) We should *not only* be cautious, *but also* be bold.

我們不僅要謹慎，而且要大膽。

(b) It is *not only* what we do, *but also* what we say, for which we are accountable.

我們不但對於自己所做的事應該負責，而且對於自己所說的話也應負責。

Not only ... but (also) 是強調那用 but also 作附加的敘述事實的短語。

(a) Faith is *not only* a real power, *but* one of the greatest we know.

信念不僅是一種實在的力量，而且是我們所知道的最大力量之一。

(b) My friend *not only* reads, *but also* writes, poetry.

*what is more 在句中起的是一種插入語的作用，一般不能把它當作“連詞”。——校訂者。

我的朋友不僅讀詩，而且也作詩。

類似語句：

not alone ... but

We aim *not* at intellectual culture *alone*, *but* at a harmonious development of the entire human being.

我們的目的是不但要培養智力，而且要使人完整地和諧發展。

not merely...but

He was *not merely* brave, *but* humane.

他不但勇敢，而且心地善良。

not only...but...as well

It concerns *not only* me *but* you as well.

這事不但與我有關，而且與你有關。

His poems are *not only* read by the upper society *but* to the common masses as well.

他的詩不僅上流社會人士讀，普通的人民羣衆也讀。

9. when (= and then, just then)

We were about to start *when* it began to rain.

我們正要出發，天却下起雨來了。

這個 *when* 跟普通引導時間狀語從句的 *when* 不同，它是 *just then, and then*（那時，正在那時）的意思。在這個 *when* 前面照理應加逗點，但事實上也有不加的。

(a) Midge was alone in his room that morning *when* a visitor entered without knocking.

那天早晨米奇獨自在室中，（那時）一個客人未敲門就進來了。

(b) Fixem shook his head, and was just about to reply, *when* the door opened, and in came a lady.

菲綏姆搖搖頭，正要回答，而門開了，一個婦人走了進來。

10. where; whence

(a) Cynthia went to Boston, *where* (= and there) she became a teacher in a high school.

辛西亞到波士頓去，在那裏她當了一個中學的教師。

(b) He returned to Hong Kong, *whence* (and from there) he came.

他回到香港，他是從那裏來的。

(a) On July 6 the party set out to establish Camp 8, *whence* (= and from there) they hoped the summit might be gained.

這隊人在七月六日出發去建立第八號營地，他們希望能從那裏到達頂峯。

(b) The next day John went with me to the station, *where* I bought a ticket for my home town.

第二天約翰陪我到車站去，在站上我買了張回家鄉的車票。

Where 在上面的例句中都是 and there 的意思; whence 則是 and from there 的意思，二者都具有並列連詞的作用。

11. who (= and he)

I gave the letter to Jack, *who* (= and he) posted it for me.

我把信交給傑克;他替我郵寄出去。

這個 *who* 與前面的 *when* (= and then), *where* (= and there) 一樣，是附加別種敘述的連續用法 (continuative use), 跟引導定語從句的 *who* 不同。

(a) But I had an old uncle at Vincennes, *whom* (= and him) I went to see from time to time.

我有一個老伯父在溫森涅斯，我時常去訪問他。

(b) The flat roofs of the houses have gardens on them, *whose* (= and their) fragrance perfumes the air.

這些房子的平屋頂上都有花園，花園的香氣使空氣散發着香味。

12. *which* (= and it)

After leaving the University Henry Thoreau joined his brother in teaching a private school *which* he soon gave up. (= ...but he soon gave it up (gave up teaching).)

大學畢業之後，亨利·托洛和他的兄弟一同在一所私立學校裏教書，但不久就離去了。

Which (= and it) 的連續用法有兩種：

(1) 僅僅承接先行名詞：

(a) There were great storms of wind and rain, *which* (= and they) confined us to the house.

有大暴風雨，我們只好株守家中。

(b) This room had but a single window, *the shutters of which* (= and its shutters) were kept closed when it was not in use.

這房間只有一扇窗，不用時窗戶始終是關着的。

(2) 承接先行子句的語意：

(a) The next [letter] has no date whatever, *which* (= and this fact) is in itself suspicious.

在第二封信上全未注明日期，這事本身便是可疑的。

(b) We talked a long while about our boyhood days, *after which* (= and after it) we had a good dinner.

我們談了好久關於童年時代的事，然後吃了一頓豐盛的午餐。

Whereupon (= thereupon), whereby (= thereby) [因此]，[於是] 等可以代替“介詞+which”，不過現在並不常用。

After about an hour in the air the balloon began to fall, which necessitated throwing out nearly two sacks of ballast, *whereupon* (= and thereupon) it again rose.

在空中大約一小時之後，氣球開始下降，於是，必須拋出將近兩袋沙囊，它才又上升了。

13. neither ...nor; either...or

(a) He went on as a statue would: that is, he *neither* spoke *nor* moved.

他像一尊雕像那樣呆着：既不說話，又不動彈。

(b) *Either* I will find a way, *or* I will make one.

我要找出一條路，或開闢出一條路來。

Neither...nor, either...or 都是選擇性的並列連詞短語。不過前者是否定的；後者是肯定的。neither 可用普通的否定語 not, never 等代替，這種句法比較通俗。例如：

(a) I do *not* know your name, *nor* yet your face.

我不曉得你的姓名，也不認識尊容。

(b) I will *never* do it, *nor* consider it.

我決不幹這事，也不考慮幹。

如用 neither, nor...either 來代替 nor, 那是口語上的一種加強語勢法：

(a) You did not see him, *neither* did I.

你沒有碰見他，我也沒有碰見他。

(b) We are not in the wrong, *nor* is John *either*.

我們沒有錯，約翰也沒有錯。

II. 反意的並列結構(Adversative Co-ordinations)

1. but

Charms strike the sight, *but* merit wins the soul.

美色動人目，美德感人心。

But 用於對稱否定與肯定的句式，有“(非……) 而是……”的意思。

(a) Courage consists, not in blindly overlooking danger, *but* in seeing and conquering it.

勇敢並不在於盲目地不顧危險，而在於正視危險並加以克服。

(b) I am very ill; not bodily, *but* mentally.

我病得很厲害；不是肉體上的，而是精神上的。

(c) The test of a good education is not the stock of knowledge acquired, *but* the stimulus given to mental activity.

一個人所受教育的好壞不在於他所獲得的知識量，而在於他的激發智力活動的泉源。

但是也有不用 *but* 而表現同樣的意義的。例如：

Industry, not inspiration, won him his success.

使他獲得成功的不是靈感，而是勤奮。

2. nevertheless (= yet, still)

Your arguments are strong; *nevertheless* they do not con-

vince me.

你的論點是有力的；但仍不能使我信服。

Charles urged us to go, *nevertheless* (= yet, still) we firmly refused.

查理士勸我們去，但我們堅決拒絕了。

3. notwithstanding (= nevertheless)

Whatever you say, I will go *notwithstanding*.

不論你怎樣說，我還是要去的。

Notwithstanding 除此以外還有下面的用法：

介詞

He went *notwithstanding* your orders.

他不顧你的命令而去。

連詞

He went *notwithstanding* [that] he was ordered not to.

雖吩咐他不要去，他卻去了。

4. only (= but)

He makes good resolutions, *only* never keeps them.

他下了極大的決心，只是不能堅持。

Only 是 but 的意思，並留有原來的 [唯]，[只是] 的意味。

(a) Do what you like; *only* keep silence.

做什麼都行，只是不要作聲。

(b) The seeds are about as big as sweet almonds, *only* a little thicker.

種子大約有甜杏仁一般大小，只是稍厚些。

5. on the contrary

I have not nearly done. *On the contrary*, I have only just begun.

我還沒有做好。正好相反，我剛開始。

否定了先行子句的事實，揭示別的肯定的事實時，用 *on the contrary*, *rather* 等短語或詞。

(a) Helen was delighted with the generosity of the Major's good humour. *On the contrary*, it quite took aback and disappointed poor Pen.

這位少校由於一時高興而顯出的慷慨使海倫感到喜悅，但可憐的潘卻吃了一驚，大失所望。

(b) The tempo must not be reduced! *On the contrary*, we must increase it as much as is within our powers and possibilities.

速度是斷斷不可放慢的！恰恰相反，我們必須竭盡我們的全力提高速度。

6. on the other hand(=on the contrary)

Begin well, and it will be easier and easier as you go on. *On the other hand*, if you make a false start it is far from easy to retrieve your position.

開始得好，那就會越來越容易。反之，倘若開端錯誤，那就很難挽回你的地位了。

Miss Raeborn's dress was a cheerful red, verging on crimson.

Lady Winterbourne, *on the other hand*, was dressed in severe black.

萊朋小姐的衣服是一件接近大紅的艷紅色，但溫特本夫人却穿着深黑色的衣服。

On the other hand 也有改用 *on one hand...and on the other hand* 的:

On one hand I have to work, *on the other hand*, I have a great many visitors.

一方面我有工作要做，另一方面又有許多來客。

7. *rather*(=on the contrary)

The old man is no coward; *rather* (=on the contrary), he is a man of high spirits.

那老人不是個懦夫，倒是個意氣昂揚的人。

8. *still*(=but); *yet*(=but still)

(a) You argue well, *still* I am not convinced.

你講得很好，但我並不信服。

(b) He is very clever, *yet* he does not study hard.

他很聰明，但不用心學習。

Still 和 *yet* 都可作副詞用，但在這裏它們都是作反意的並列連詞用的。

(a) I miss him, *yet* I am glad he went.

我因他不在感到寂寞，但他走了我還是高興的。

(b) I like dogs; *still* I do not care to own one.

我喜歡狗；但我並不想養狗。

9. though(=but)

I will come, *though* I don't expect to enjoy myself.

我要來的，但我想來了我不會快活。

這個 *though* 與表示“讓步”的 *though* 不同，它是附加地給先行詞以說明的，因之生出和 *but* 相似的意義來，顯然是作並列連詞用的。

這個 *though* 在會話體的文字中概放在句尾：

I'll come and see you to-morrow. I can only stay a few minutes, *though*.

明天我要來看您，但只能作幾分鐘的停留。

10. withal(=at the same time, moreover)

Withal 是古語，概和 *but*, *yet*, *and* 等詞連用。

He confessed that his master was rather severe, but *withal* a good man.*

他承認他的先生雖然有些嚴厲，但卻是個善良的人。

I meddle with no tradesman's matters nor women's matters, *but withal* I am, indeed, Sir, a surgeon to old shoes.

我不會用斧頭鋸子，也不會做婦女的針線活，但是我確是個醫治舊鞋的外科醫生（補鞋匠）。

11. all the same; just the same(=in spite of that)

He is often rude, but I like him *all the same*.

他常常是粗暴的，但我仍喜歡他。

*後半句也可說作 *but* (he was) a good man *withal*.

The expression is ungrammatical; *all the same* it is a part of the common tongue.

那句話是不合語法的，但仍是口語的一部分。

12. conversely

A temperate man has intelligence; and, *conversely*, an intelligent man is apt to be temperate.

節酒的人是聰明的；反過來說，聰明的人傾向於節酒。

III. 排列與分析(Arrangement And Analysis)

本節所揭示的，是用連詞或副詞排列或分析並列子句的句式。

1. at one time...at another

At one time he is friendly, *at another* he is the reverse.

他有時和藹可親，有時却正好相反。

My friend Mr. Wang was *at one time* a professor in a university, and *at another* an engineer in a factory.

我的朋友王先生有一個時期當大學教授，又有一個時期在工廠當工程師。

類似語句

One moment I am gay, *the next* I am sad.

我忽而快樂，忽而又覺得憂鬱。

2. first, then, finally; first, then, last

First, the senses are to be set to work; *then*, memory; and, *at*

last, understanding and judgment.

首先得用感官，其次得用記憶力，最後得用理解力與判斷力。

Taking the picture is mainly a question of speed, *first* in selecting the subject, *then* in focusing the camera, *then* in taking the actual picture and *finally* in handing out the card.

攝影主要是速度的問題，首先在選擇題材，其次在對準焦點，再次在拍攝影像，最後則在交出相片。

3. first, second, etc.; firstly(或 first), secondly, etc.

Silas was thinking with double complacency about his supper; *first*, because it would be hot and savoury; and *secondly*, because it would cost him nothing.

賽拉斯有兩個理由對他的晚餐感到滿意，第一，因為這頓晚餐是又熱又香，第二，因為這頓晚餐可以白吃，不需他破費分文。

(a) His three reasons were, *first*, that he was busy; *secondly*, that he was very weak; and *thirdly*, that he was not interested in the matter.

他的三個理由是：第一，他事情很忙；第二，他身體很弱；第三，他對那事不感興趣。

(b) Mrs. Waterbrook inquired, *firstly*, if I went much into the parks, and *secondly*, if I went much into society.

華特普魯太太問了兩個問題：第一，她問我是否常去逛公園，第二，我是否有很多交際應酬。

還有 the first, the second 等是用作名詞，來表示“排列與分析”的。

There are also two kinds of thoughts which are carefully to be

avoided. *The first* are, such as(=those which) are affected and unnatural; *the second* [are], such as are mean and vulgar.

又有兩種思想應該小心避免：第一是矯飾不自然的那類思想；第二是卑劣鄙俗的那類思想。

4. half...half

We are *half* pleased and *half* sorry.

我們半喜半悲（悲喜交集）。

Tom was rattling on, *half* in jest, *half* in earnest, for he wanted to get Arthur out of his serious vein.

湯姆一半開玩笑，一半認真地繼續饒舌，因他想使阿瑟擺脫沉重的心情。

5. in the first place...in the second (next) place, etc.

In the first place Mr. Watton said so, *in the next place* there are such things as newspapers.

第一，華頓先生這麼說；第二，還有報紙哩。

6. now...now

Now I thought it might be for this purpose, and *now* I thought it might be for that purpose.

一會兒我覺得這是做這個用途的，一會兒又覺得是做那個用途的。

7. partly...partly

His arguments were *partly* right and *partly* wrong.

他的議論，一部分是對的，一部分是錯的。

The causes of his great progress in study lie *partly* in his diligence, *partly* in his teachers' careful guide.

他學習巨大進步的原因，一是他自己的努力，二是他的老師們精心指導。

8. sometimes...sometimes

The old woman has told me the history of her life, *sometimes* smiling, *sometimes* crying.

老婦人有時微笑，有時哭着把她的身世講給我聽。

So we went on—*sometimes* up hill, *sometimes* down hill—for a long time, as it seemed.

於是我們繼續前進了很久——時而上山，時而下山。

又有用 sometimes...(at) other times 的：

Sometimes it seems all right and splendid, and *other times* I know I'm behaving badly.

我的行動有時似乎正確得當，有時自知是乖謬的。

9. at times...at (other) times

At times the weather was clear, *at times* misty.

天氣忽晴忽陰。

At times he reads, *at other times* he works in the field.

他有時讀書，有時在田間勞動。

10. what with...and what with

What with the cold *and what with* the rain we were miserable.

天氣又冷，又下雨，我們真狼狽。

What 在這裏有 somewhat(partly) 之意; with 是 on account of 的意思。後面一個 what with 有時省略。

(a) *What with* official business *and* private business, I have no leisure.

由於公務和私事，我忙得一點閒暇也沒有。

(b) *What with* his studies *and what with* his social activities, he has no time left for idle thoughts.

由於功課(忙)和社會活動(多)，他沒有多餘時間去胡思亂想了。

和它相似的，有用 what by...and what by 構成的句式。只是 what with 是表示“原因”，而 what by 則表示“方法”或“手段”。

...but in reasoning and debating of matters, *what by* his natural wit, *and what by* daily exercise, surely he had few fellows.

...但在推論和辯論問題上，一則由於他天賦的才智，再則由於他每天的練習，確實很少有人能和他相比。

以下所示的例子，是靠名詞、代詞相關的使用，來表示“排列”或“分析”的意思的。

11. the former, the latter

Virtue and vice are before you: *the latter* leads you to misery, *the former* [leads you] to peace.

德與惡在你面前：後者引你到悲境，前者使你得到平安。

the one...the other

這語句以 the one 為“前者”或以 the other 為“前者”，是依作者的意思來決定的，閱讀時須注意。

(a) Every noble acquisition is attended with its risks; he who

fears to encounter *the one* must not expect to obtain *the other*.

一切貴重物品的獲得都是帶着危險的，怕遭遇後者（危險）的人，切勿期望獲得前者（貴重物品）。

(b) Temperance and labour are the two best physicians; *the one* sharpens the appetite — *the other* prevents indulgence to excess.

節制與勞動是兩位最好的醫生：後者增進食慾；前者防止過度放縱。

one...the other

He has two sons: *one* serves in the army, *the other* works in a factory.

他有兩個兒子：一個在軍隊服役，另一個在工廠工作。

one thing...another

Flour is *one thing*, and friendship is *another*, and they should not be confused.

麵粉是一件事，友誼是另外一件事，不應混淆。

第五章

特種動詞及動詞短語

(Certain Verbs & Verb Phrases)

本章所說的主要是(1)只用來表示語法意義的輔助動詞; (2)用來表達情態意義的情態動詞;(3)除 be, become 等外的聯繫動詞。

I . Do, Did, Does (作表意動詞用)

作表意動詞用的 do 有許多不同的意義，現在把它主要的意義列舉於下：

1. 及物動詞用法

(a)do=accomplish, etc.

Clark at once decided to *do* what Hamilton had failed to *do*.

克拉克立刻決定去完成哈密爾頓所未完成的事。

(b)do=to engage in as one's regular work

He can find nothing to *do* just now.

他目前找不到工作。

(c)do=confer, bestow, etc.

I wonder if you will *do* me a favour.

未知能蒙允諾否？

That *does* you great credit.

這件事你做得好！

(d)do = to cook (food)

Take out the vegetables and *do* them a little longer.

請將蔬菜取出，再煮一會兒。

(e)do = to visit (a place) as a sight-seer

You can't *do* the Palace Museum properly in a day.

你不能在一天內把故宮博物院參觀完畢。

(f)do = to act the part of

I saw Irving *do* Hamlet many years ago.

幾年前我看過歐文扮演哈姆雷特。

(g)do = travel, cover

He *did* twenty miles a day on foot.

他一天步行二十英里。

2. done (= finished)

(a)The meat is *done*.

肉已煮熟了。

Do you like the meat well or under *done*?

你要煮爛的肉或不太爛的肉？

(b)I'm *done* with her from this day on.

從今天起我跟她斷絕關係了。

(c)Alas! poor man, he is *done* for.

唉！可憐他完結了。

3. 不及物動詞用法

(a)Let us be up and *doing*.

讓我們奮起吧！

(b) This will never *do*.

這決不行。

It doesn't *do* to be rude to strangers.

對陌生人無禮貌是不行的。

(c) Both mother and child are *doing* well.

母子均安。

Do 與介詞或副詞連用，表示各種意義。如：

(a) Money has not much to *do with* happiness, after all.

金錢畢竟跟幸福沒有多大關係。

(b) I can't *do without* this.

沒有這個我過不了（我必需這個）。

(c) The old house has been *done away with*.

那舊屋已被拆除。

4. 代替動詞的 do

Do 作替代動詞用時，不一定代替一個動詞；它也可以代替動詞短語，這是應該特別注意的。

Carry your gun as I *do* (=carry) mine.

照我的樣子背槍。

“May I sit down?” “*Do*. Have a cigarette?”

“我可以坐下來嗎？” “請坐！抽根香煙吧？”

5. 強調的 do

爲了要加強動詞的語氣，用助動詞 do。

(a) Such things *do* happen.

這樣的事情確實是有的。

(b) Thomas, *do* be quick.

托馬斯，快點！

For several more months the fight *did* indeed go on.

戰鬥確實還繼續了好幾個月。

6. 倒置的 do

Seldom *did* I see him.

我很少看到他。

Do(does, did) 強調表意動詞時，緊放在該動詞之前。但因着重而將副詞放在句首時，輔助動詞 do (does) 或 did 是緊接於副詞之後的。例如：

(a) Only for a second *did* Manfred's eyes leave the old man's face.

曼弗雷特的視線離開那老人的面孔只一秒鐘工夫。

(b) His eyes were on the window and the darkening lawn. Not once *did* he remove his gaze.

他注視着窗子和正在逐漸變暗的草地，未曾轉移他的視線一次。

II . May

情態動詞 may 因它所連用的動詞的性質等關係，有各種各樣的用法：或表示“許可”，或表示“不確實性”，或用作 can, ought 等意義，此外還有 may well, may as well 等慣用語。

1. 表示“允許，可能，應該”

(a) You *may* go now.

現在你可以去了。

(b) She *might* not have heard you.

她也許不曾聽到你的話。

(c) You *may* be thankful that you escaped.

你應該得以幸免而表謝意。

2. 表示能力; as best one may (= as well as one can)

(a) All *may* do what has been done by man.

人人都能做人所做過的事。

(b) They defended themselves *as best they might*.

他們拼命自衛。

I will translate some of these *as best I may* into common speech.

我要盡力用普通的語言來翻譯一些這類作品。

3. may well

May well 有 have good reason to 的意思; 是敘述無疑之事或表示言行得當時用的。

You *may well* be proud of your daughter.

你足以你的女兒而自豪。

She is proud of her skill, *and well she may*.

她以她的技巧自豪，這是有道理的。

May 表示“願望”(wish), “目的”(purpose), “讓步”(concession) 的用法, 請參看各該項。

4. may as well

You *may as well* do it (= There is no objection to your doing it.)

你做那事也好 (我不反對你做那事)。

Since you have begun to read the letter you *may as well* finish it.

你既已開始閱讀這封信, 那就不如把它讀完了吧。

5. may (might) as well...as

May as well...as 是對比兩個事實, 指出第一事實和第二事實結局相同, 而着重於第二事實時用的; might as well...as 則多用於全然不可能的場合。

(a) In my mind, one *may as well* not know a thing at all as know it but imperfectly.

我以為與其一知半解, 倒不如完全不懂。

(b) You *might as well* expect the river to flow backward as hope to move me.

你希望使我動心, 這比希望河水倒流還難。

Might as well...as 的構句, 也可用如次的句式代替:

You want to prevent her from talking; *you might as well* try to turn the course of the Yangtse.

你想阻止她絮絮不休地談話, 這比想改變長江的河道還難。

Ⅲ. 表示“決心，意圖”等意義的動詞(Verbs Expressing Determination, Intention, etc.)

表示“決心”(determination)或“意圖”(intention)等意義，使用特種動詞語句。茲逐項舉例說明於下：

1. bent on (upon)

I am *bent on* mechanics.

我專心致志於機械學。

[類似語句]

(a) The man was so *intent upon* what he was doing that he never heard our steps.

那人聚精會神地工作着，所以全未聽到我們的腳步聲。

(b) He was so *absorbed in* his writing.

他專心致志地寫作。

2. have a mind(=intend);be going to (=intend)

(a) I *have a mind* to pitch you into the river.

我想把你扔進河中。

(b) I *am going to* start for London.

我擬動身到倫敦去。

“沒有……的意圖”用 have no mind:

But Rasher *had no mind* to be recognized at this particular moment.

但拉什並不想人們在這時刻認出他來。

3. make up one's mind

She make up her mind to accept the invitation.
她決定接受邀請。

His mind was made up to a productive labour.
他決定從事生產勞動。

4. set one's heart on (upon)

He had set his heart upon a literary career.
他有志於文學事業 (他想從事寫作)。

5. will

(a) *I will speak; you cannot stop me.*
我無論如何要講話; 你阻止不了我。

(b) *I will be obeyed.*
你們(他們)必須服從我。

這個 *will* 比含有未來意義的只表示意志的 *will* 表現更強的決心。

[比較]

I'll (= I will) be a good boy for the future.
今後我要做個好孩子。

IV. 表示習慣性動作的動詞 (Verbs Expressing Habitual Action)

1. be given to

He *is given to* talking big.

他愛吹牛。

He seems to have *given himself up to* pleasure.

他似乎耽於逸樂。

2. go on (=continue); keep on (=continue)

(a) They *went on* arguing all night.

他們終夜繼續爭論。

(b) It *kept on* snowing heavily.

天繼續下着大雪。

副詞 *on* 有“繼續”的意思，如 *walk on*, *talk on* 等。

(a) The struggle is still *going on*.

戰爭仍在繼續進行中。

(b) If you *go on* to learn at this rate, you will soon puzzle me, in Greek especially.

假使你以這樣的速度繼續學習下去，特別是希臘文方面，你不久就會使我不知怎樣辦好了。

3. used + 不定式

His friends *used to urge* him to write something.

他的朋友們時常慫恿他寫點東西。

I'm not so strong as I *used to be*.

我不像以前那麼強壯了。

4. will; would

(a) There he *will* sit hour after hour without saying a word.

他常在那裏默坐幾小時。

(b) She *would* knit us stockings and mittens.

她過去常給我們織襪子和手套。

助動詞 *will* 可以用來表示現在的習慣; *would* 則可以用來表示過去的習慣。

(a) Accidents *will* occur in the best-regulated families.

在管理得最有條理的家庭裏，也常會發生意外事故。

(b) He *would* sit for hours without saying a word.

他過去常常默坐幾點鐘。

5. be wont to

I *am wont to* think that I can read Homer, and assuredly, if any man enjoys him, it is I.

我常覺得自己能誦讀荷馬的作品，而且確信我真正能夠欣賞荷馬的作品。

Wont 又有作名詞用的。例如：

Burns, *after his wont* (= as usual), pushed things to an extreme.

彭斯依然故我，做事走極端。

V. 表示必要、義務、意願的動詞(Verbs Expressing Necessity, Duty And Desirability)

1. is (are) to

(a) He *is to go* to bed now.

此刻他應該去睡了。

(b) You *are to hand in* your exercise book tomorrow.

你明天應把練習簿交來。

Is(are) to——的時態的用法，應該特別注意。這個詞組的過去時及完成時，是表示未曾實現的動作的。

(a) She *was to go* there by train.

她本應該乘火車到那裏去的（但她沒有這樣做）。

(b) They *were to have been married* last June, on a Saturday.

他們本應該在去年六月的一個星期六結婚的。

2. be bound to (=must)

Every one *is bound to* make the best of himself.

每個人都必須好自努力。

Bound 這個詞大都只用於現在時。

I *am bound to* say I don't believe him.

我不得不說我是不相信他的話的。

3. be obliged to(=be compelled to)

I *was obliged to* send for the doctor.(=I had to send...)

我不得不派人去請醫生來。

[類似語句] to be compelled to; to be forced to

That morning his wife had been so ill that he *was forced to* lay off for a day.

那天早晨他妻子病勢沉重，他不得不停止工作一天。

He *was compelled to* do it by absolute necessity.

他萬不得已才做這事。

4. have to (= must)

He *had to* resign his position owing to ill-health.

他因病不得不辭職。

現在時

We *have to* spend the night in town.

我們不得不在城裏過夜。

將來時

You *will have to* hurry to be in time for school.

你要趕上課時間，非趕快走不可。

現在完成時

Sir Charles *has had to* sell the house he was brought up in.

查理斯勳爵不得不將自己在其中長大的房屋賣掉了。

5. have got to (= must)

He *has got to* go to bed now.

此刻他必須睡覺了。

這個習語是完成時，它沒有過去時和將來時，它是俗語，與 have to 的意義完全相同。

But, now she's dead, we've *got to* bury her.

但如今她已死了，我們不得不將她埋葬。

6. cannot but+動詞; cannot help+現在分詞

(a) I *cannot but* come to the conclusion.

我不得不得出這個結論。

(b) You *cannot help* liking him.

你不禁會喜歡他。

Naturally, these new circumstances *could not but* influence our technical intelligentsia.

自然，這些新情況必然會影響到我們技術界的知識分子。

Cannot help 後面有用 but+動詞的。例如：

We *cannot help but* go.

我們不得不去。

7. had better+不帶 to 的不定式; had best+不帶to 的不定式

(a) You *had better* leave the room.

你還是離開房間吧。

(b) So we *had best* go out, if you are ready.

所以，如果你已準備好了，我們最好出去吧。

Had better 和 had best 後面都跟不帶 to 的不定式動詞。

(a) You *had better* ask him.

你還是問他吧。

(b) You *had best* do so.

你最好這樣做。

8. need

Need 有作助動詞及表意動詞兩種用法。作助動詞用時，詞形不因人稱，數和時態而變化。作表意動詞用時，則須因人稱、數和時態而有所變化。

助動詞

(a) *Need* I go to bed now?

此刻我必須去睡了嗎?

(b) He *need* not go.

他不必去。

表意動詞

(a) He *needs* an exercise book for taking notes.

他需要一本練習簿，用來作筆記。

(b) You do not *need* to trouble about such trifles.

這些小事，你不必介意。

9. needs must; must needs

這個 *needs* 係副詞，是 *of necessity* 的意思。不論 *needs must* 或 *must needs* 都作 [必須]，[非……不可] 解。

(a) A soldier *needs must* obey.

士兵非服從不可。

(b) I *must needs* do it.

這件事我非做不可。

The nation that has no higher good than pleasure or even dollars or calico (= clothes), *must needs* be in a poor way.

除逸樂、金錢和衣着外沒有較高理想的民族，情況必然是不佳

的。

10. shall 用於第二人稱和第三人稱

(a) You *shall* wait till I come.

你必須等到我來。

(b) He *shall* preside at all meetings.

一切會議須由他主持。

像上例所示，*shall* 用於第二人稱或第三人稱時，是表示說話者的意志，即命令、願望，等等。而從被說述者方面說來，則是自己應盡的義務。

(a) Death is certain to all, all *shall* die.

死對一切人是不能避免的，所有的人都必定會死。

(b) You *shall* have the money as soon as I can get it.

我一得到錢，就一定還你。

11. ought to

(a) [duty]

You *ought to* tell your mother at once.

你應該立刻告訴你的母親。

(b) [desirability]

You *ought to* come with us.

你應該和我們同來。

Man *ought* always *to* have something that he prefers to life; otherwise life itself will seem to him tiresome and void.

人應有比生命更可貴的東西；否則，生命本身在他看來就會是無聊而空虛的。

像 *ought to have done* 那樣用完成時不定式 (perfect infinitive) 時，是表示應做但未曾實現的事；*ought not to have done* 是表示不應該做而做了的事。

(a) *You ought to have done it long ago.*

這事你早就應該做了。(但未做)

(b) *You ought not to have followed his example.*

你本不應學他的榜樣的。(但竟學了他的榜樣)

12. should

(a) *You should go to bed early.*

你應該早點睡覺。

(b) *Yes, of course, I should have knocked.*

是，我的確應該敲門的。(但未經敲門就進來了)

Should 跟前項的 *ought* 一樣，它和完成時連用時，是表示應作而未作；*should not* 和完成時連用，是表示不應作而作了的事。

(a) *He should have asked your permission.*

他應該請求你的許可的。(但未經請求)

(b) *You should not have stayed in the office.*

你不應留在辦公室的。(但竟留在辦公室)

VI. 願望表現法 (Expressions Of Wish)

(用虛擬語氣表示的場合)

1. 正常的詞序

(a) *Success attend you!*

祝你成功!

(b) *Plague take him!*

該死的東西!

表示“願望”可用這種虛擬式。在這種語句之前加 *may* 也是同樣的意思。

May success attend you!

= *Success attend you!*

祝你成功!

2. 詞序的倒置

Long live People's Republic of China!

中華人民共和國萬歲!

3. *may*

(a) *May you be happy!*

祝你幸福!

(b) *Long may you live!*

祝您長壽!

(a) *May he rest in peace!*

願他安息!

(b) *May it please you to hear me.*

請聽我說。

4. *would that* 的省略式

Would that he were here! (= I would (wish) that he were here.)

但願他來。(他如果來就好了)

Would 本有表示“願望”(desire)的用法。例如:

Every one desires to live long, but no one *would* be old.

人都願長生，而誰也不願年老。

Would that 所表示的，是幾乎無實現可能的願望，或跟現實相反的願望。

(a) *We would that we could believe it.*

可惜我們無法相信。

(b) *I would to heaven that I had stayed.*

可惜我沒有留下來。

Would that 的 that 也有省略的。例如:

Would you were with us!

你若和我們在一起多好!

除 would that 之外，還有用如下的句式表示“願望”的:

(1)表示現在的願望(Past subjunctive):

O that such a moment could but last for ever!(= O how I wish that such...)

哦，但願這一瞬間能永遠繼續下去!

(2)表示過去的願望(Past perfect subjunctive):

Had we but known in time!

早知道就好了!(可惜早先不知道)

(3)如表示過去的願望，而帶有情態動詞時，則用 present perfect:

O could I have understood him better!

悔不該當初不了解他。(如果能早點了解他就好了)

5. had (would) as lief

I would as lief go there as anywhere else.
我寧願到那兒去而不願到其他任何地方去。

(a) *He had as lief go as stay.*

他寧可走而不願留下來。

(b) *For saying that she "would as lief hear a cat mew as Elder Shepard preach", Ursula Cole was whipped.*

厄休拉·科爾因說了“與其聽謝潑德長老講道，寧可聽貓兒叫”而遭鞭撻。

6. would rather; had rather

I had rather live in a wilderness of monkeys and listen to their chatter than in a company of men who denied everything.
我寧願住在曠野的羣猴之中聽猴子們饒舌，而不願生活在這些什麼也不承認的人們中間。

Would rather 後面也有跟名詞從句的。例如：

(a) *I shall certainly not write if you would rather that I didn't.*

你若不要我寫信給你，我一定不寫。

(b) *Would you rather I didn't talk about it?*

你是不是不要我講這件事？

7. would sooner; would as soon; had sooner; had as soon

I had sooner (= would rather) go.

我情願去。

Sooner, as soon 等表示“選擇”的語句帶有相對的語句時，常以 than, as 等引導從句，表示 [與其……毋寧……] 的意思。

(a) I *would sooner* stay where I am *than* go to such a place.

與其到那種地方去，我寧願留在這裏。

(b) I *would as soon* leave at once if I'm not wanted.

倘若沒有事情，我要立刻就走。

(c) I *would as soon* not tell it. There is no reason either why I should.

我不想談這樁事，而且也沒有理由要談。

8. shall 用於詢問對方意圖

When *shall* I take over my new duties? (=When do you wish me to take...?)

我什麼時候接受新的任務？

(a) What *shall* I do for you?

您要我做什麼？

(b) *Shall* I help you to some butter?

我給你點奶油好嗎？

9. prefer (one) to (another)

I *prefer* walking *to* driving.

我情願步行不願乘車。

I *prefer* lemonade *to* beer.

我願喝檸檬水，不願喝啤酒。

10. should (would) like to

I *should like to* be a farmer.

我願做個農民。

I should(would) like to 是語氣婉轉的慣用語。

(a) I *should like to* have something to eat before we go.

我想在出去前吃點東西。

(b) Have you any time to spare today? I'd *like you to* help me with grammar.

你今天有空嗎？希望你幫我溫習語法。

11. will(=wish)

(a) Come or go, as you *will* (=wish).

來去聽你自願。

(b) Let him do what he *wills*.

讓他做自己願做的事吧。

這個 *will* 不是助動詞，而是作表意動詞用的。在下面的句子中，*will* 是表示“決心”的：

Whatever he *wills* he may accomplish.

有志者事竟成。

VI. 不定式和動名詞的特殊用法(Special Uses Of Infinitives And Gerunds)

本節講述不定式和動名詞的特殊用法，即本書前幾章中所未述

及的一些用法。

1. 以不定式代替名詞

(a) *To travel*, however, takes a great deal of time and money.

然而旅行要花許多時間和金錢。

(b) *To pass this bridge* was the severest trial.

走過這座橋是一次最嚴重的考驗。

(a) *To doubt*, under the circumstances, is almost to insult.

在這種情況下，懷疑幾乎就等於侮辱。

(b) *To will* and *not to do* when there is opportunity, is in reality *not to will*; and *to love* what is good and *not to do it*, when it is possible, is in reality *not to love it*.

下決心而有機會時並未實行，實際上是未下決心；愛善事而在可能行善時並未去做，實際上是不愛善事。

(c) *To produce works not unworthy of this great epoch* is our duty, and a task we must not shirk.

創作無愧於這個偉大時代的作品是我們的責任，也是我們義不容辭的職責。

(d) I consider it the best part of an education *to have been born and brought up in the country*.

我認為生長在鄉村是一種最好的教育。

在古代英語裏，常用不帶 *to* 的不定式來代替名詞，現在格言中還保留着。例如：

Better *ask* than *go astray*. (= *To ask* is better than *to go astray*)

問人勝於走錯路。

2. 動名詞用作名詞

Drinking too much is not good.

飲酒過多是不好的。

(a) *The giving brightness to pictures, is much, but the giving brightness to life, more.*

給繪畫以光彩是重要的，但給生命以光彩尤為重要。

(b) There was no *mistaking* the expression on her face.

她臉上的表情是明白無誤的。

(c) He was born with the gift of *winning* hearts.

他天生有一種博人歡心的本領。

3. 動名詞用作動詞的賓語

He preferred *going* alone.

他情願獨自去。

(a) I simply love *riding*.

我的確愛騎馬。

(b) So at last she gave up *striving to solve the problem*.

因此，她終於放棄了解決那問題的努力。

4. 不定式用作動詞的賓語

(a) He resolved *to go*.

他決定去。

(b) Leila had learned *to dance* at a boarding school.

萊拉在寄宿學校裏學會了跳舞。

(a) I long *to see* her again.

我極想再見她一面。

(b) We agreed *to set out* the following day.

我們同意第二天出發。

5. 不定式限制形容詞*

(a) This fruit is *good to eat*.

這水果是好吃的。

(b) We must get *ready to start*.

我們一定要做好出發的準備。

(a) He is *anxious to please* everybody.

他很想使每個人高興。

(b) There is no water here *fit to be drunk*.

這裏沒有可飲的水。

6. 插入不定式

Truth to tell (= To tell the truth), he was no fool.

實在說，他並不是傻瓜。

這種不定式短語是對全句所加的一種注釋。

(a) *To be brief* (= In brief), the matter stands thus.

簡單地說，事情就是這樣。

(b) The army of Xerxes, *to put it in round numbers*, comprised

2,500,000 persons.

*本節中的不定式動詞從前的語法書把它看作是限制或修飾形容詞的狀語，但現今語法書一般把它當作補足先行形容詞意義的賓語。——校訂者

薛西斯的軍隊約二百五十萬人。

(c) *To make a long story short*, this is what she told me.

簡略地說，這就是她講給我聽的故事。

7. 構成感嘆句的不定式

O *to be* a boy again! (= Oh, how I wish I might be a boy again!)

哦，我若重新做個孩子多好！

(a) *To think* of that man having the impudence to call!

想不到那人會厚着臉皮來探訪！

(b) Oh, *to be* in Hangchow now that April is there! (= Oh, how happy I should be if I were in Hangchow...!)

唉，現在已是四月了，我若在杭州多麼愉快！

8. a-hunting, a-playing, etc.

One day I went *a-fishing*.

有一天我去釣魚。

A- = in, into, on。這個 a- ...ing 的形式是由古語遺留下來的，現代作家的作品中也常常可以看到，不過現在這個 a- 一般是省略的；如 go fishing, go hunting, go swimming 等等。這 fishing, hunting, swimming 都不是分詞，而是動名詞，因為它們是 a-fishing, a-hunting, a-swimming 之略，而 a- 在這兒等於介詞 on。

He was glad that Denstone had persuaded him to go *a-roving*.

他因丹斯東勸他遊歷四方，覺得非常高興。

VI. 聯繫動詞(Copulas)

像動詞 be(am, are, is, was, were 等)那樣用來連接主語和謂語的詞，叫做聯繫動詞(copula)。換句話說，就是指需要表語的不及物動詞。

這類動詞最常用的除上述 be 以外，有如下例子：

1. come(=turn out)

(a) It will *come* true.

它將成為事實。

(b) It will *come* right.

事勢可以轉佳。

[比較]

All *goes* well.

一切順利。

Everything *has gone* wrong.

萬事不利。

2. fall

The result *fell* short of his expectation.

結果達不到他的期望。

(a) He *fell* ill.

他病了。

(b) He was sleepy and soon *fell* asleep.

他瞌睡，不久就睡着了。

3. get (= become)

(a) You will *get* wet.

你會淋濕的。

(b) It is *getting* dark (cold, hot).

天暗(冷, 熱)起來了。

I have *got* better (well).

我好點(痊愈)了。

4. go (= become)

He had to *go* hungry.

他只得挨餓。

(a) Her cheeks *went* red.

她的面頰發紅了。

(b) I shall *go* mad if you don't stop that noise.

你不停止喧鬧, 我要給吵得神經錯亂了。

5. grow (= become)

His cheeks *grew* pale.

他的面頰變得蒼白了。

(a) He is *growing* old now.

他現在老了。

(b) Why, you have *grown* a man.

哎呀, 你已經長成大人了。

6. hold

The statement *holds* true.

那話是真實的。

We shall find the same general principles *hold* good.

我們會發現這些總原則是適用的。

7. keep(=remain, stay)

The food will *keep* good.

這食物可以經久不腐。

(a) We must *keep* healthy to take part in the building of socialism.

我們爲了參加社會主義建設，必須保持健康。

(b) She felt all the angrier because Hector Ward *kept* so cool and smiling.

她因赫克托·沃德保持着這樣冷淡的態度而且微笑着，覺得更加憤怒了。

8. lie

The man *lay* dead.

那人死了。

(a) The building *lay* in ruins.

房子全毀了。

(b) What I ate *lies* heavy on my stomach.

我所吃的東西存在胃裏不消化。

9. look(=appear)

(a) He *looks* angry.

他看來很生氣。

(b) You *look* younger than I do.

看起來你比我年輕。

When the sun is setting, the clouds often *look* red or golden.

夕陽西沉的時候，雲常呈紅色或金黃色。

10. make (=become)

He *makes* a good captain.

他是個好船長。

(a) She will *make* a good cadre.

她將成爲個好幹部。

(b) I am sure you will *make* a model worker.

你一定會成爲模範工人。

11. prove(=turn out)

This will *prove* impossible.

這事結局一定不可能。

(a) He *proved* to be an imposter.

原來他是個騙子。

(b) The plan *proved* a failure.

那計劃結果成爲泡影。

12. stand(=be)

He *stood* firm in the matter.

關於這事，他毫不動搖。

(a) I'll *stand* [=be] her friend.

我願意做她的朋友。

(b) He *stands* [=is] in need of help.

他需要幫助。

13. turn(become)

He *turned* traitor.

他成了叛徒。

(a) Leaves *turn* yellow in autumn.

秋天樹葉變成黃色。

(b) She again *turned* pale and then blushed scarlet.

她又一次面色發青，接着兩頰泛出緋紅色來。

14. turn out(=prove)

He will *turn out* a brave man.

他將成爲一個勇士。

(a) The report *turned out* to be unfounded.

這消息後來證明是無稽的。

(b) She has *turned out* quite a pretty girl.

她已成爲一個十分美麗的姑娘。

15. **wax**(=grow, become)

He *waxed* eloquent about all the righteousness and advantages of the new plan.

他滔滔不絕地議論起新計劃的優點和正確性來了。

She *waxed* merry when she saw him again.

當她跟他重逢時，她變得快活起來了。

除上述各例外，常用的聯繫動詞尚有：

appear

She *appeared* quite touched at this news.

她聽到這消息後顯然很感動。

become

He *becomes* famous.

他成名了。

burn

The potatoes *have burnt* black and we can not eat them.

馬鈴薯已經燒焦了，我們不能吃了。

continue

The weather *continued* fine for several days.

這幾天的天氣一直都很好。

die

His father *died* martyr.

他的父親是烈士。

draw

The two ships *draw* level.

這兩艘船並排航行。

drop

John *dropped* asleep.

約翰睡得很熟。

feel

He *felt* better today.

他今天感到好一些。

fly

The door *flew* open.

門突然打開。

look

He *look* very excited.

他看來非常興奮。

marry

She *married* young.

她早婚。

remain

He *remained* single.

他仍然獨身。

rest

We *can* never *rest* content.

我們絕不能滿足。

run

He *ran* first in the race.

他賽跑得第一名。

seem

The book *seems* quite interesting.

這書似乎很有興趣。

sit

Tom *sat* silent.

湯姆默然坐着。

smell

The flowers *smell* sweet.

這花很香。

sound

This explanation *sounds* convincing.

這一解釋聽來很有說服力。

stay

That fellow never *stays* sober for long.

那個人經常爛醉。

taste

The milk *tastes* sour.

牛奶酸了。

[General Information]

书名=活用英语句式指南

作者=钟子岩著

页数=253

SS号=11193736

出版日期=1986年10月第1版

封面页

书名页

版权页

目录页

第一章 各种句型

I · 陈述句

- 1 · 词序的倒置(状语放在句首)
- 2 · said he之类的倒置法
- 3 · 强势的语句放在句首的强势法
- 4 · 省略句
- 5 · 插句
- 6 · 感叹句

II · 从属陈述句

- 1 · 用that引导
- 2 · that的省略
- 3 · 用but或but that引导
- 4 · 用I est引导
- 5 · 从属感叹句
- 6 · 作补语用的不定式
- 7 · 所有格+动名词

III · 祈使句

- 1 · 主语省略
- 2 · 主语不省略
- 3 · 主语与动词倒置
- 4 · 用I et的祈使句
- 5 · Will [woul d] you ?
- 6 · 感叹祈使句
- 7 · 带be的第三人称祈使句
- 8 · pray放在句首的祈使句
- 9 · please后跟不定式

IV · 从属祈使句

- 1 · 用不定式表示
- 2 · that shoul d [mi ght]

V · 疑问句

- 1 · 句首用疑问词(特殊疑问句)
 - 2 · 用陈述句的形式
 - 3 · 疑问句和do, does, did
 - 4 · 带can或be的思考疑问句
 - 5 · 修辞疑问句
 - 6 · 带shoul d的修辞疑问句
 - 7 · 省略式疑问句
 - 8 · 插入疑问句
 - 9 · 疑问词不在句首
- VI · 从属疑问句
- 1 · if-clause; whet her-clause
 - 2 · 疑问词引导
 - 3 · 用不定式
 - 4 · 省略式从属疑问句
- VII · 特殊的主语、宾语和名词从句
- 1 · 先行词it
 - 2 · 强调的it
 - 3 · 复述性质的it
 - 4 · 无人称it
 - 5 · 名词从句
 - 6 · 动名词代替名词从句
 - 7 · 间接宾语在直接宾语之前; 直接宾语在间接宾语之前

第二章 状语结构

I · 条件

- 1 · if + 直陈语气
- 2 · if + 虚拟语气:
 - a · 现在时
 - b · 过去时
 - c · 过去完成时
- 3 · if-clause的省略式
- 4 · 略去if 而将动词或助动词放在主语之前
- 5 · unless
- 6 · but for
- 7 · but that

- 8 · in case(that); in case of
- 9 · provided(that)
- 10 · 祈使语气+and
- 11 · 祈使语气+or(else)
- 12 · granting that; let it be granted that
- 13 · suppose(that)
- 14 · 独立分词结构
- 15 · whether or(not)
- 16 · otherwise
- 17 · 不定式短语
- 18 · 分词短语
- 19 · 介词+动名词
- 20 · once-clause
- 21 · without; with
- 22 · 表示愿望的if-clause

II · 原因或理由

- 1 · because
- 2 · for
- 3 · as
- 4 · since
- 5 · inasmuch as
- 6 · 分词短语
- 7 · 独立分词结构
- 8 · 不定式短语
- 9 · that-clause
- 10 · 用关系代词或关系副词引导的从句
- 11 · 介词+动名词
- 12 · for fear of+动名词; for fear that
- 13 · 介词短语
- 14 · what with and what with
- 15 · in that
- 16 · lest
- 17 · whereas

III · 结果

A · 并列结构

- 1 · so
- 2 · accordingly
- 3 · therefore
- 4 · consequently
- 5 · then
- 6 · hence(thence)
- 7 · thus
- 8 · as a result
- 9 · with the result [consequence] that

B · 从属结构

- 10 · so that
- 11 · that; so that
- 12 · so as to; such as to
- 13 · whence
- 14 · where-fore
- 15 · 不定式
- 16 · 介词短语

IV · 让步

- 1 · though, although
- 2 · though(al though) 和虚拟语气连用
- 3 · though, although从句中主语和动词的省略
- 4 · though, although的倒置
- 5 · as; that
- 6 · if; even if
- 7 · granted that
- 8 · may but[and yet]
- 9 · indeed , but[and yet]
- 10 · for all(that)
- 11 · however + 形容词或副词
- 12 · 以-ever, -soever等词引导
- 13 · no matter how [what, who, etc ·]
- 14 · 由代词的倒置构成
- 15 · 祈使语气 + as one may[will]

- 16 · 略去t hough[al t hough]
- 17 · 省略形式
- 18 · while; whi l st
- 19 · in spite of (the fact that)
- 20 · despite; regardl ess of
- 21 · not wi thstandi ng
- 22 · when
- 23 · wher eas
- 24 · 不定式
- 25 · 分词
- V · 目的
 - 1 · 不定式
 - 2 · in order to
 - 3 · on purpose to(不定式)
 - 4 · that may
 - 5 · in order that
 - 6 · so that
 - 7 · lest
 - 8 · so as to
 - 9 · 介词短语
 - 10 · and
- VI · 行为方式
 - 1 · as
 - 2 · 谓语省略的as-clause
 - 3 · 主语省略的as-clause
 - 4 · 主语和动词省略的as-clause
 - 5 · as引导插句
 - 6 · as if; as though
 - 7 · as much as [as if] to say
 - 8 · like, unli ke
 - 9 · 口语用法的li ke
 - 10 · so that
 - 11 · such that
 - 12 · 分词或分词短语

13 · what

VII · 程度、比例和比较

1 · as as

2 · 动词省略的as as

3 · (not) so as

4 · not so much as

5 · as(as much as的省略形式)

6 · in proportion as

7 · according as

8 · (more) than

9 · than-clause的省略

10 · so that

11 · so much that; so much so that

12 · such that

13 · so as to

14 · but that

15 · the+比较级

16 · too+不定式

17 · too+for

18 · 表示程度的介词短语

19 · 数量表现法

VIII · 除外

1 · beyond

2 · but

3 · but that

4 · except; except that

5 · excepting

6 · save; save that

7 · only that

8 · other than

IX · 地点

1 · where

2 · whence

3 · whither

4 · wherever; wheresoever

X · 时间

1 · when

2 · while; whilst

3 · after

4 · before

5 · until; till

6 · as

7 · since

8 · now that

9 · directly; immediately

10 · the moment, the instant, etc ·

11 · once

12 · as long as; so long as

13 · as soon as

14 · as often as

15 · whenever; whenssoever

16 · every time

17 · by the time(that)

18 · ere

19 · 独立分词结构

20 · 分词短语

21 · when-clause的省略形式

22 · 介词+动名词

23 · 介词短语

24 · 作状语用的名语

XI · 限制

1 · as; as far as

2 · as regards

3 · 用for引导的语句

4 · in that; in so far as

XII · 伴随情况

1 · 独立分词结构

2 · much less; still less; much more; still more

3 · 分词短语或定语短语

4 · without; instead of; besides 引导的动名词

第三章 定语结构

I · 定语

1 · 定语的后置

2 · 作定语短语用的介词短语

3 · 作定语短语用的不定式

4 · 不定冠词的倒置

II · 分词短语

1 · 在名词之后

2 · 在所修饰的名词之前

3 · 作补语用

III · 同位语句

1 · 同位语

2 · or

3 · namely; viz · ; that is; i · e · ; for example;

e · g ·

4 · as; such as

5 · 同位语从句

IV · 定语从句

1 · who, which, that, etc ·

2 · 关系代词的省略

3 · 先行词的省略

4 · when, before, etc ·

5 · where, whence, why

6 · where in, whereby, etc ·

7 · such as; as

8 · 作定语用的 which

9 · but

第四章 并列结构

I · 特殊并列连词

1 · again

2 · also

3 · even

- 4 · besides
- 5 · as well; as well as
- 6 · both and
- 7 · what is more(better, etc ·)
- 8 · not only but(also)
- 9 · when
- 10 · where; whence
- 11 · who
- 12 · which
- 13 · neither nor; either or

II · 反意的并列结构

- 1 · but
- 2 · nevertheless
- 3 · notwithstanding
- 4 · only
- 5 · on the contrary
- 6 · on the other hand
- 7 · rather
- 8 · still; yet
- 9 · though
- 10 · withal
- 11 · all the same; just the same
- 12 · conversely

III · 排列与分析

- 1 · at one time at another
- 2 · first, then, finally; first, then, last
- 3 · first, second, etc ·; firstly [first],
secondly, etc ·
- 4 · half half
- 5 · in the first place in the second(next) place,
etc ·
- 6 · now now
- 7 · partly partly
- 8 · sometimes sometimes

- 9 · at times at (other) times
- 10 · what with and what with
- 11 · the former the latter

第五章 特种动词及动词短语

- I · Do, Did, Does (作表意动词用)
 - 1 · 及物动词用法
 - 2 · done
 - 3 · 不及物动词用法
 - 4 · 代替动词的do
 - 5 · 强调的do
 - 6 · 倒置的do
- II · May
 - 1 · 表示“允许, 可能, 应该”
 - 2 · 表示“能力”; as best one may
 - 3 · may well
 - 4 · may as well
 - 5 · may [might] as well as
- III · 表示“决心, 意图”等意义的动词
 - 1 · bent on [upon]
 - 2 · have a mind; be going to
 - 3 · make up one's mind
 - 4 · set one's heart on [upon]
 - 5 · will
- IV · 表示习惯性动作的动词
 - 1 · be given to
 - 2 · go on; keep on
 - 3 · used + 不定式
 - 4 · will; would
 - 5 · be wont to
- V · 表示“必要、义务、意愿”的动词
 - 1 · is (are) to
 - 2 · be bound to
 - 3 · be obliged to
 - 4 · have to

- 5 · have got to
- 6 · cannot but + 动词; cannot help + 现在分词
- 7 · had better + 不带to的不定式; had best + 不带to的

不定式

- 8 · need
- 9 · needs must; must needs
- 10 · shall 用于第二人称和第三人称
- 11 · ought to
- 12 · should

VI · 愿望表现法(用虚拟语气表示的场合)

- 1 · 正常的词序
- 2 · 词序的倒置
- 3 · may
- 4 · Would that 的省略式
- 5 · had(would) as lief
- 6 · would rather; had rather
- 7 · would sooner; Would as soon; had sooner; had

as soon

- 8 · shall 用于询问对方意图
- 9 · prefer to
- 10 · should(would) like to
- 11 · will (=wish)

VII · 不定式和动名词的特殊用法

- 1 · 以不定式代替名词
- 2 · 动名词用作名词
- 3 · 动名词用作动词的宾语
- 4 · 不定式用作动词的宾语
- 5 · 不定式限制形容词
- 6 · 插入不定式
- 7 · 构成感叹句的不定式
- 8 · a-hunting, a-playing, etc ·

VIII · 联系动词

- 1 · come
- 2 · fall

- 3 · get
- 4 · go
- 5 · grow
- 6 · hold
- 7 · keep
- 8 · lie
- 9 · look
- 10 · make
- 11 · prove
- 12 · stand
- 13 · turn
- 14 · turn out
- 15 · wax

附录页